EXPERIMENTAL EVALUATION OF MULTISCALE BEHAVIOR
OF HUMAN BONE

A Dissertation
Submitted to the Graduate Faculty
of the
North Dakota State University
of Agriculture and Applied Science

By
Chunju Gu

In Partial Fulfillment of the Requirements
for the Degree of
DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY

Major Program:
Materials and Nanotechnology

December 2014

Fargo, North Dakota
Title

EXPERIMENTAL EVALUATION OF MULTISCALE BEHAVIOR OF HUMAN BONE

By

Chunju Gu

The Supervisory Committee certifies that this disquisition complies with North Dakota State University’s regulations and meets the accepted standards for the degree of

DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY

SUPERVISORY COMMITTEE:

Kalpana S Katti
Co-Chair

Dinesh R Katti
Co-Chair

Xuefeng Chu

Sangita Sinha

Approved:

9/10/2015
Date

Erik Hobbie
Department Chair
ABSTRACT

Bone is the most important structural member of the human body. It has a unique hierarchical structure and its primary constituents, collagen molecules and hydroxyapatite, are arranged in a staggered pattern at nanometer scale. Osteogenesis imperfecta (OI) is an inheritable disease characterized by the fragility of bones and other tissues rich in the type I collagen. OI provides an interesting platform for investigating how alterations of collagen at the molecular level cause changes in the structure of bone. In this dissertation, multi-scale-, particularly nanometer and sub-micro scale-, behaviors of both normal and OI (putative type I) human bones have been evaluated experimentally. Since chemical treatment influences collagen or mineral structure, we have used “undisturbed bone samples” that are not subjected to any chemicals as previously done in literature. Photoacoustic-Fourier transform infrared spectroscopy (PA-FTIR) experiments reveal orientational differences in stoichiometry of hydroxyapatite. FTIR, electron microscopy, scanning probe microscopy, and nanomechanical tests also show that the OI disease results in a distorted microstructure in bone and that the mineralization of hydroxyapatite in OI is also altered. Modulus mapping test displays the distribution of mineralized fibril and extrafibrillar mineral according to the spatial variation of elastic properties. Dynamic nanomechanical behaviors of OI bone and normal bone indicates that the viscoelasticity of intact bone is mostly determined by the mineral. Also investigated are molecular composition and nanomechanical properties of different anatomical positions in the diaphysis of an OI human tibia. Our study on OI bone describes unique differences in collagen as previously described but also elaborates on unique influence of the non-collagenous proteins on mineralization of bone in OI. The fundamental premise of this work is investigation of the molecular basis of this highly debilitating bone disease.
ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

“Strength and growth come only through continuous effort and struggle” (Napoleon Hill).

After six years’ effort and struggle toward completing this dissertation, I gained strength and growth as a researcher. But I would have not completed it without many helping hands. I take this opportunity to express my gratitude for those who are generous and made their contributions to this work.

First of all, I would like to gratefully and sincerely thank my advisor, Dr. Kalpana S. Katti, for her continuous guidance, understanding, encouragement, and patience. Without her support, I would not have reached this stage of getting a doctoral degree. Next, I would like to sincerely thank my co-advisor, Dr. Dinesh Katti, for his invaluable suggestions and candid feedback on the progress of my doctoral work.

My sincere thanks to esteemed committee members Dr. Xuefeng (Michael) Chu and Dr. Sangita Sinha for generously serving in my committee and helping my doctoral work as well.

I am also grateful to the NDSU graduate school for awarding me “Doctoral Dissertation Fellowship”, NSF MRI and IMR grants for providing the instruments for the experiments, as well as Civil and Environmental department for hiring me as a grader and giving me financial support.

I owe special thanks to the bone donors and their families. Without them, the research work could not have been done.

In addition, I thank Jan Lofberg and Milka Singha as well as Civil and Environmental department for being helpful to me in many aspects during my graduate studies.

Further, I would like to thank all of my group members for instrument operation training (Nanoindentation and AFM: Bedabibhas Mohanty, NanoDMA: Rohit Khanna, FTIR: Avinash
Ambre, SEM and FE-SEM: Scott Payne, and Polisher: Kristin N. Alstadt), cooperations (bone
sample preparation: Amanda Grosz and Ashley Roder) and helpful discussions (Shashindra M.
Pradhan, Anurag Sharma, Him Upadhyay, Md. Molla, Mohammad Reza Parsa, Keshab Thapa,
e tc.) throughout my graduate study.

Finally, I owe special thanks to my parents (Xingchang Bao and Shanrong Gu), my
parents-in-law (Heling Bu and Baoyun Li), my sister (Hanzhen Bao), my brother-in-law
(Yinming Zhu), and my husband (Honggang Bu) for their love and support.
DEDICATION

This dissertation is dedicated to my dear husband (Honggang Bu) and my lovely daughters (Gu and Laura).
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

ABSTRACT .......................................................................................................................... iii

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS ........................................................................................................ iv

DEDICATION ....................................................................................................................... vi

LIST OF TABLES .................................................................................................................. xiii

LIST OF FIGURES ................................................................................................................ xv

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS ..................................................................................................... xix

LIST OF APPENDIX FIGURES ........................................................................................... xxii

CHAPTER 1. INTRODUCTION .............................................................................................. 1

1.1. Bone ................................................................................................................................. 1

1.2. Structure of bone ............................................................................................................. 3

1.2.1. Level 1: Collagen fibrils and minerals (molecular and nanometer scales) .................. 5

1.2.2. Level 2: Mineralized fibril (sub-micro scale) .............................................................. 6

1.2.3. Level 3: Fibrillar arrays (micro-scale) ....................................................................... 8

1.2.4. Level 4: Fibrillar array patterns (micro-scale) .............................................................. 9

1.2.5. Level 5: Osteon (micro-scale) ................................................................................... 10

1.2.6. Level 6: Cortical (compact) and cancellous (spongy or trabecular) bone (meso-scale) ......................................................................................................................... 10

1.3. Bone mechanics ............................................................................................................ 11

1.3.1. Macro-scale mechanical properties of bone .............................................................. 12

1.3.2. Meso-scale mechanical properties of bone .............................................................. 15

1.3.3. Micro-scale mechanical properties of bone .............................................................. 16

1.3.4. Sub-micro-scale mechanical properties of bone ....................................................... 17

1.3.5. Nano-scale mechanical properties of bone .............................................................. 20

1.4. Bone diseases and bone quality characterization ........................................................ 21
CHAPTER 6. ANISOTROPIC PROPERTIES OF HUMAN CORTICAL BONE WITH OSTEOGENESIS IMPERFECTA...........................................................................................................198

6.1. Introduction..................................................................................................................................198

6.2. Methods and Materials..................................................................................................................202
  6.2.1. Materials ..................................................................................................................................202
  6.2.2. Experiment .................................................................................................................................203

6.3. Results............................................................................................................................................205
  6.3.1. Microstructure of OI human cortical bone................................................................................205
  6.3.2. Photoacoustic-FTIR (PA-FTIR) spectra ..................................................................................208
  6.3.3. In situ FE-SEM nanoindentation..............................................................................................211

6.4. Discussion.....................................................................................................................................216
C.1.1. Transverse section........................................................................................................262
C.1.2. Longitudinal section......................................................................................................268
C.2. Medial section, fixed with a series of chemicals and fractured in liquid N\textsubscript{2}........278
  C.2.1. Transverse section (acquired on 2/6/2014) .................................................................278
  C.2.2. Longitudinal section (acquired on 2/5/2014) .............................................................285
C.3. Lateral section, fixed with a series of chemicals and fractured in liquid N\textsubscript{2}..........288
  C.3.1. Transverse section (acquired on 2/6/2014) .................................................................288
  C.3.2. Longitudinal section (acquired on 2/6/2014) .............................................................295
C.4. Posterior section, fixed with a series of chemicals and fractured in liquid N\textsubscript{2}.......297
  C.4.1. Transverse section (acquired on 2/6/2014) .................................................................297
  C.4.2. Longitudinal section (acquired on 2/6/2014) .............................................................306

APPENDIX D. AFM IMAGES OF HEALTHY AND OI HUMAN BONES ......................311

D.1. Healthy human femur (left image: height, right image: phase) ......................................311
  D.1.1. No treatment, not polished............................................................................................311
  D.1.2. No treatment, polished ..............................................................................................312
  D.1.3. Demineralized for 5 minutes in EDTA (left image: height, right image: phase) .......313
  D.1.4. Demineralized for 4 hours in EDTA ........................................................................314
D.2. OI human tibia ..................................................................................................................316
  D.2.1. No treatment, not polished...........................................................................................316
  D.2.2. No treatment, polished ..............................................................................................317
  D.2.3. Demineralized for 5 minutes ....................................................................................320
# LIST OF TABLES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.1. Composition of human cortical bone (7)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2. Elastic properties of human femoral cortical bone (39)</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3. Ultimate stresses of human femoral cortical bone (39)</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4. AFM mechanical measurement at mineralized fibril level of bone tissue (96)</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5. Nanoindentation measurements at lamellar level and micronanoindentation measurements at osteonal level (96)</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6. OI Nosology (118)</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1. Band assignments of PA-FTIR spectra from human bone</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2. Major components of the ν1, ν3 PO$_4$$^{3-}$ bands in bone (27, 87, 88)</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3. Thermal diffusion depths of bone varying with Phase Modulation (PM) frequencies</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1. Band assignments of PA-FTIR spectra from OI bone</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2. Major components of the ν1, ν3 PO$_4$$^{3-}$ bands (75, 77, 78)</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3. Crystal size along c-axis direction of bone mineral (nm)</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4. Ca/P molar ratio of bone specimens (±STD)</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.1 Statistics of elastic moduli from all modulus maps (Figure 4.4 and Figure 4.5)$^a$</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2. Elastic moduli and hardness of normal and OI bones for the transverse sections</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.3. Elastic moduli and hardness of normal and OI bones for the longitudinal sections</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.1. Roughness Rq of the bone specimens of intact and demineralized bone samples (average ±STDEV)</td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.2. Tan δ, E’, and maximum displacement values of intact and demineralized normal bone specimens at frequencies of 25, 50 and 100Hz (average ±STDEV)</td>
<td>185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3. Tan δ, E’, and maximum displacement values of normal and OI bone specimens at frequencies of 25, 50 and 100Hz (average ±STDEV)</td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.1. Band assignments of PA-FTIR spectra from OI bone</td>
<td>210</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6.2. Elastic moduli and hardness of anterior and posterior sections of human OI cortical bone for the transverse sections................................................................. 214

6.3. Elastic moduli and hardness of anterior and posterior sections of human OI cortical bone for the longitudinal sections. ................................................................. 216
## LIST OF FIGURES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Figure</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.1. Hierarchical organization of a human femur bone from macro- to nanoscale. (a) Macroscale organ level—human femur bone. (b) Macroscale tissue level—osteon. (c) Microscopic level—bone lamellae (adapted from (15, 16)). (d) Mesoscopic level—fiber bundle. (e) Nanoscale level—mineralized fibril. (f) Molecular level—collagen molecule and mineral particle (adapted from (14)).</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2. Collagen molecules and intermolecular cross-linking (a) Triple-helical structural motif of collagen molecules (adapted from (15)). (b) Lysyl oxidase cross-linking (adapted from (17)).</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3. SEM image of staggered arrangement of mineralized fibrils.</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4. Schematic illustration of the arrangement of mineralized collagen fibrils aligned both with respect to crystal layers and fibril axes. (a) Orthotropic symmetry arrangement. (b) Transversal isotropic arrangement (adapted from (4)).</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5. Four most common fibril array patterns with SEM images of fractured surfaces and schematic illustrations (not drawn to scale) of the basic organizational motifs. (a) Parallel fibrils array. (b) Woven fibrils array. (c) Plywood-like structure present in lamellar. (d) Radial fibril arrays (adapted from (4)).</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6. SEM micrograph of an osteon.</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.7. Different types of loads that can be applied on bone.</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.8. A schematic representation of load versus indenter displacement data for an indentation experiment. The quantities shown are $P_{\text{max}}$: the peak indentation load; $h_{\text{max}}$: the indenter displacement at peak load; $h_f$: the final depth of the contact impression after unloading and $S$: the initial unloading stiffness.</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1. Schematic diagram of PA-FTIR instrument.</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2. (a) Location of the tested sample from the human femur; and (b) Schematic representation of bone showing from where the sample were cut, 1 represents inner side, 2 middle, and 3 outer side of the bone piece.</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3. SEM micrographs of human bone (a and b) Transverse section; and (c and d) Longitudinal section.</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4. HAP in bone. (a) Staggered arrangement if mineralized fibrils. (b) Relationship between collagen molecules and intra-fibrillar HAP crystal. (c) HAP structure projected on the (001) plane and (100) plane (adapted from (71)).</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5. LS-PA-FTIR spectra of human bone in the 4000-400 cm$^{-1}$ region, velocity of mirror: 0.158 cm/s: (a) Transverse; and (b) Longitudinal sections.</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.6. (a) PA-FTIR spectra of human bone (transverse and longitudinal) in the 4000-2000 cm$^{-1}$ region; and (b) Inverted second-derivative curves in the energy range of 3900-2400 cm$^{-1}$. ................................................................. 57

2.7. Photoacoustic infrared spectra of human bone (transverse and longitudinal) in the energy range of 2000-1180 cm$^{-1}$. ................................................................. 59

2.8. Photoacoustic infrared spectra of human bone (transverse and longitudinal) in the energy range of 1180-400 cm$^{-1}$. ................................................................. 60

2.9. (a) Inverted second-derivative curves in the energy range of 1180-927 cm$^{-1}$; curve fitting analysis of the $\nu_1$, $\nu_3$ phosphate band (1180–927 cm$^{-1}$) of (b) Transverse section, and (c) Longitudinal section. ................................................................. 62

2.10. PA-LS-FTIR spectra of human bone in the 4000-400 cm$^{-1}$ region, velocity of mirror: 0.158 cm/s. (a) Transverse section, 4000-400 cm$^{-1}$ region; (b) Longitudinal section, 4000-400 cm$^{-1}$ region. ................................................................. 65

2.11. SS-PA-FTIR spectra of human bone: (a) Transverse section (4000-830 cm$^{-1}$); (b) Longitudinal section (4000-830 cm$^{-1}$); (c) Transverse section (2000-830 cm$^{-1}$); and (d) Longitudinal section (2000-830 cm$^{-1}$). ................................................................. 67

3.1. Schematic representation of bone showing from where the samples were cut; transverse section and longitudinal section are both from the anterior area of OI bone specimen. .................................................................................................. 97

3.2. (a-j) SEM micrographs of OI bone specimens. ................................................................................................................................. 100

3.3. PA-FTIR spectra of human OI cortical bone and healthy cortical bone (longitudinal and transverse sections, respectively) in the 4000-400 cm$^{-1}$ region, velocity of mirror: 0.158 cm/s. .................................................................................................................. 101

3.4. PA-FTIR spectra of human OI cortical bone and healthy cortical bone (longitudinal and transverse sections, respectively) in the 2400-1180 cm$^{-1}$ region. .................................................................................................................. 104

3.5. Inverted second-derivative curves in the energy range of 2400-3900 cm$^{-1}$ ........................................................................... 105

3.6. PA-FTIR spectra of human OI cortical bone and healthy cortical bone (longitudinal and transverse sections, respectively) in the 1180-420 cm$^{-1}$ region. .................................................................................................................. 106

3.7. Inverted second-derivative curves of OI longitudinal and transverse sections in the 1720-1590 cm$^{-1}$ region. .................................................................................................................. 107

3.8. (a) Curve fitting analysis of the $\nu_1$, $\nu_3$ phosphate band (1180–927 cm$^{-1}$) of (a) Transverse section, and (b) Longitudinal section. .................................................................................................................. 109

3.9. X-ray diffractogram of bone specimens: Healthy bone (T-transverse section and L-longitudinal section) and OI bone specimens. .................................................................................................................. 112
3.10. Structure of an HAP nanocrystal .......................................................... 118
4.1. Schematic of cutting bone ........................................................................... 139
4.2. Modulus mapping instrument ...................................................................... 140
4.3. In situ HR-SEM nanoindention were performed on (a) Transverse surface; (b) Longitudinal surface ................................................................. 141
4.4. Modulus map images and corresponding data of normal human bone. (a) Modulus map image for the longitudinal section, area: 2µm×2µm; (b) Modulus data of the black line in Figure a; (c) Modulus map image for the transverse section, area: 5µm×5µm; (d) The square subset in Figure c ................................................................. 143
4.5. Modulus map images and corresponding data of OI human bone. (a) Modulus map image for the transverse section, area: 3µm×3µm; (b) The square subset in Figure a; (c) Modulus data of the black line in Figure a; (d) Modulus map image for the longitudinal section, area: 3µm×3µm; (e) The square subset in Figure c; (f) Modulus data of the black line in Figure d ................................................................. 145
4.6. Elastic modulus results produced by modulus mapping on the longitudinal and transverse sections of both normal and OI bones. Bars show the median with 25th (Q1) and 75th (Q3) percentiles. The lines perpendicular to the box are whiskers. Upper limit of whisker = Q3 + 1.5 (Q3 - Q1); lower limit of whisker = Q1 - 1.5 (Q3 - Q1). *outliers of the whisker. (N=35840) .................................................................................. 146
4.7. Representative load-displacement (L~D) curve for bone sample at peak load of 50µN. .................................................................................. 148
4.8. Elastic modulus values of human bone in the transverse section .................. 149
4.9. Schematic illustration of the mineralized collagen fibril (not drawn to scale). Plate-like mineral crystals are sandwiched between layers of collagen molecules. P, T, L refer to the periosteal, transverse and longitudinal planes, respectively, perpendicular to the corresponding arrows. Transverse plane is normal to the bone long axis and periosteal plane is parallel to the natural outer surface of the bone (adapted from (77)). ................. 152
4.10. Arrangement of collagen and mineral, black lines represent collagen molecules; green squares represent mineral particles (not drawn to scale) ......................................................................................................................... 153
5.1. Bone samples (Specimens for testing are from the mid-diaphysis part as shown in squares) ................................................................................................. 174
5.2. Schematic of bone specimen positions and indentation directions .................. 174
5.3. Schematic plot of load versus time for a variable dynamic load test. ................ 177
5.4. The mean loss tangent with 95% confidence intervals of normal bone specimens with variable static force (a) Longitudinal section; (b) Transverse section ................................. 178
5.5. Representative storage modulus, loss modulus and loss tangent values of the human bone during one dynamic nanoindentation (Longitudinal section, frequency: 50Hz) (a) \( E' \) and \( E'' \); (b) Tan\( \delta \). ................................................................. 179

5.6. Photoacoustic infrared spectra of undisturbed and demineralized human bone in the energy range of 4000-400cm\(^{-1} \) (a) Transverse section, time of demineralization: 5 minutes, 4, 8, 24, and 72hours; (b) Transverse and longitudinal sections, time of demineralization: 5 minutes, and 4hours. ......................................................... 181

5.7. The mean loss tangent with 95% confidence intervals of demineralized normal bone specimens with variable static force (a) Longitudinal section, demineralized for 5 minutes; (b) Longitudinal section, demineralized for 4hours; (c) Transverse section, demineralized for 5 minutes; (d) Transverse section, demineralized for 4 hours. .......... 183

5.8. The mean loss tangent with 95% confidence intervals of OI bone specimens with variable static force (a) Longitudinal section (b) Transverse section. ............................ 187

6.1. Schematic representation of bone showing from where the samples were cut, transverse section and longitudinal section are both from the anterior, medial, posterior, and lateral areas of OI bone specimen. ......................................................... 203

6.2. In situ FE-SEM nanoindention performed on the surface of (a)(b) Trans-anterior section; (c)(d) Longi-anterior section.............................................................................. 205

6.3. SEM images of human OI cortical bone (a, b) Anterior section; (c, d, e) Medial section; (f, g, h) Posterior section; (i, j) Lateral section (Thin arrows indicate secondary osteon (SO) regions and arrowheads bone powder region probably created from cutting procedure). ........................................................................ 207

6.4. PA-FTIR spectra of human OI cortical bone (anterior, medial, posterior, and lateral sections for the longitudinal and transverse sections, respectively). Velocity of mirror: 0.158 cm/s. (a) 4000-450 cm\(^{-1} \) region; (b) 2300-450 cm\(^{-1} \) region......................................................... 209

6.5. Representative load-displacement curve taken during a single nanoindentation test of the OI bone specimen with peak load of 50 µN: (a) Trans-anterior section; (b) Trans-posterior section. ................................................................. 212

6.6. Nanomechanical properties of normal and OI bones (anterior and posterior sections) in the transverse plane. OL refers to osteonal lamellae, and IL refers to interstitial lamellae. (a) Elastic modulus; (b) Hardness................................................................. 213

6.7. Nanomechanical properties of normal and OI bones (anterior and posterior sections) in the longitudinal plane. OL is osteonal lamellae, and IL is interstitial lamellae. (a) Elastic modulus; (b) Hardness................................................................. 215

xviii
## LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AD</td>
<td>Autosomal dominant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AR</td>
<td>Autosomal recessive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AFM</td>
<td>Atomic force microscopy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMD</td>
<td>Bone mineral density</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CT</td>
<td>Computerized tomography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Demi</td>
<td>Demineralized</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DI</td>
<td>Deionized</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DMA</td>
<td>Dynamic mechanical analyzer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DXA</td>
<td>Dual-energy X-ray absorptiometry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EDS</td>
<td>Energy-dispersive X-ray spectroscopy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EDTA</td>
<td>Ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FEA</td>
<td>Finite element analysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FE-SEM</td>
<td>Field emission-scanning electron microscope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FTIR</td>
<td>Fourier transform infrared spectroscopy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FTIRI</td>
<td>Fourier transform infrared imaging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FWHM</td>
<td>Full width at half maximum ()</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GMA</td>
<td>Glycolmethacrylate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HAP</td>
<td>Hydroxyapatite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPLC</td>
<td>High-performance liquid chromatography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Longi</td>
<td>Longitudinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LS</td>
<td>Linear-scan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>µCT</td>
<td>Micro-computed tomography</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
MM .....................Modulus mapping
MR .....................Microradiography
MRI .....................Magnetic resonance imaging
NCPs ....................Non-collagenous proteins
NI .....................Nanoindentation
NMR .....................Nuclear magnetic resonance
OI .....................Osteogenesis imperfecta
PA-FTIR ..................Photo acoustic Fourier transform infrared spectroscopy
PBS .....................Phosphate buffered saline
PMMA .....................Poly(methyl methacrylate)
qBEI .....................Quantitative backscattered electron imaging
RANKL ..................Receptor activator of nuclear factor-κB ligand
RMS .....................Root mean squared
SAM .....................Scanning acoustic microscopy
SEM .....................Scanning electron microscope
SAXS .....................Small angle X-ray scattering
SRµCT .....................Synchrotron radiation micro computed tomography
SS .....................Step-scan
STDEV .....................Standard Deviation
TEM .....................Transmission electron microscopy
TGF .....................Transforming growth factor beta
Trans .....................Transverse
TS-FTIR ..................Transmission Fourier transform infrared spectroscopy
WAXS ............................ Wide-angle X-ray scattering

XRD ........................... X-ray Diffraction
# LIST OF APPENDIX FIGURES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Figure</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A.1. Information sheet of healthy human femur from NDRI</td>
<td>235</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A.2. Information sheet of OI human tibia from NDRI</td>
<td>236</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B.1. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×85</td>
<td>237</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B.2. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×100</td>
<td>237</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B.3. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×550</td>
<td>237</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B.4. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×1,000</td>
<td>237</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B.5. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×5,000</td>
<td>238</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B.6. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×13,000</td>
<td>238</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B.7. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×15,000</td>
<td>238</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B.8. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×40,000</td>
<td>238</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B.9. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×70,000</td>
<td>238</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B.10. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×37,000</td>
<td>238</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B.11. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×400</td>
<td>239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B.12. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×1,400</td>
<td>239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B.13. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×60</td>
<td>239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B.14. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×450</td>
<td>239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B.15. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×60</td>
<td>239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B.16. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×500</td>
<td>239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B.17. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×1,500</td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B.18. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×85</td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B.19. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×100</td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B.20. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×550</td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B.21. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×1,000</td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
B.22. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×15,000 .......... 241
B.23. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×40,000 .......... 241
B.24. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×70,000 .......... 241
B.25. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×40,000 .......... 241
B.26. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×100 .......... 241
B.27. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×220 .......... 241
B.28. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×180 .......... 242
B.29. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×350 .......... 242
B.30. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×750 .......... 242
B.31. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×900 .......... 242
B.32. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×5,000 .......... 242
B.33. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×2,000 .......... 242
B.34. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×30,000 .......... 243
B.35. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×75,000 .......... 243
B.36. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×7,000 .......... 243
B.37. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×20,000 .......... 243
B.38. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×13,000 .......... 244
B.39. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×3,000 .......... 244
B.40. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×10,000 .......... 244
B.41. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×30,000 .......... 244
B.42. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×80,000 .......... 244
B.43. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×15,000 .......... 244
B.44. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×25,000 .......... 245
B.45. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×40,000 .......... 245
B.46. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×40 .......... 245
B.47. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×150 .......... 245
xxiii
B.48. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×700 .......................... 245
B.49. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×3,500 ......................... 245
B.50. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×10,000 ....................... 246
B.51. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×20,000 ....................... 246
B.52. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×60,000 ....................... 246
B.53. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×120,000 ..................... 246
B.54. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×40,000 ....................... 246
B.55. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×15,000 ....................... 246
B.56. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×35,000 ....................... 247
B.57. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×40,000 ....................... 247
B.58. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×60,000 ....................... 247
B.59. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×60,000 ....................... 247
B.60. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×15,000 ....................... 247
B.61. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×40,000 ....................... 247
B.62. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×40,000 ....................... 248
B.63. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×15,000 ....................... 248
B.64. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×50 ............................. 248
B.65. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×20,000 ....................... 248
B.66. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×50,000 ....................... 248
B.67. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×35,000 ....................... 249
B.68. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×23,000 ....................... 249
B.69. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×80,000 ....................... 249
B.70. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, medial section) ×25 .......................... 249
B.71. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, medial section) ×50 .......................... 249
B.72. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, medial section) ×30 .......................... 250
B.73. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, medial section) ×100 ....................... 250
B.74. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, medial section) ×300 ................. 250
B.75. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, medial section) ×1,000 ............... 250
B.76. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, medial section) ×100 ................. 250
B.77. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, medial section) ×95 ................... 250
B.78. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., medial section) ×25 ................. 251
B.79. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., medial section) ×50 .......................... 251
B.80. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., medial section) ×150 ................... 251
B.81. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., medial section) ×1,000 .................... 251
B.82. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., medial section) ×20,000 .................. 251
B.83. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., medial section) ×80,000 .................. 251
B.84. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., medial section) ×100 ..................... 252
B.85. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., medial section) ×1,000 .................... 252
B.86. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., medial section) ×10,000 ................... 252
B.87. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., medial section) ×40,000 ................... 252
B.88. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., medial section) ×80,000 ................... 252
B.89. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., medial section) ×80,000 ................... 252
B.90. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., medial section) ×80,000 ................... 253
B.91. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, lateral section) ×25 ................... 253
B.92. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., medial section) ×25 ..................... 253
B.93. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, lateral section) ×100 .................. 254
B.94. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, lateral section) ×500 .................. 254
B.95. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, lateral section) ×3,000 .............. 254
B.96. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, lateral section) ×20,000 .............. 254
B.97. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, lateral section) ×80,000 .............. 254
B.98. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, lateral section) ×80,000 .............. 254
B.99. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, lateral section) ×10,000 ............. 255
B.100. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, lateral section) ×7,000 .................. 255
B.101. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, lateral section) ×40,000 ............ 255
B.102. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, lateral section) ×10,000 .......... 255
B.103. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., lateral section) ×25 ......................... 255
B.104. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., lateral section) ×100 ..................... 255
B.105. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., lateral section) ×100 ..................... 256
B.106. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., lateral section) ×100 ..................... 256
B.107. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., lateral section) ×500 .................... 256
B.108. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., lateral section) ×1,000 ................. 256
B.109. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., lateral section) ×7,000 ................. 256
B.110. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., lateral section) ×80,000 ............... 256
B.111. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., lateral section) ×40,000 ............... 257
B.112. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, posterior section) ×25 .......... 257
B.113. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, posterior section) ×25 .......... 257
B.114. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, posterior section) ×25 .......... 258
B.115. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, posterior section) ×100 .......... 258
B.116. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, posterior section) ×1,000 ...... 258
B.117. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, posterior section) ×4,500 ....... 258
B.118. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, posterior section) ×200 ....... 258
B.119. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, posterior section) ×20,000 ....... 258
B.120. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, posterior section) ×30,000 ...... 258
B.121. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, posterior section) ×40,000 ...... 259
B.122. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., posterior section) ×25 ............... 259
B.123. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., posterior section) ×100 ............... 259
B.124. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., posterior section) ×550 ............... 260
B.125. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., posterior section) ×3,000 ............ 260

xxvi
B.126. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., posterior section) ×10,000 ................. 260
B.127. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., posterior section) ×45,000 .................. 260
B.128. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., posterior section) ×100 ..................... 260
B.129. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., posterior section) ×100 ..................... 260
B.130. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., posterior section) ×43 ..................... 261
B.131. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., posterior section) ×25 ..................... 261
B.132. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., posterior section) ×100 ..................... 261
B.133. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., posterior section) ×150 ..................... 261
B.134. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., posterior section) ×180 ..................... 261
B.135. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., posterior section) ×180 ..................... 261
C.1. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) ×37 ............................ 262
C.2. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) ×100 ......................... 262
C.3. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) ×150 ......................... 262
C.4. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) ×250 ......................... 262
C.5. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) ×650 ......................... 263
C.6. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) ×40,000 ..................... 263
C.7. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) ×80,000 ..................... 263
C.8. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) ×3,000 ....................... 263
C.9. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) ×10,000 ..................... 263
C.10. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) ×40,000 ..................... 263
C.11. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) ×40,000 ..................... 264
C.12. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) ×3,000 ....................... 264
C.13. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) ×3,000 ....................... 264
C.14. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) ×7,000 ....................... 264
C.15. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) ×35,000 ..................... 264
C.16. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) ×40,000 ..................... 264
| C.17 | SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) \( \times 25 \) | 265 |
| C.18 | SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) \( \times 50 \) | 265 |
| C.19 | SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) \( \times 100 \) | 265 |
| C.20 | SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) \( \times 1,000 \) | 265 |
| C.21 | SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) \( \times 5,000 \) | 265 |
| C.22 | SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) \( \times 10,000 \) | 265 |
| C.23 | SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) \( \times 20,000 \) | 266 |
| C.24 | SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) \( \times 250 \) | 266 |
| C.25 | SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) \( \times 1,000 \) | 266 |
| C.26 | SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) \( \times 100 \) | 266 |
| C.27 | SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) \( \times 750 \) | 266 |
| C.28 | SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) \( \times 500 \) | 266 |
| C.29 | SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) \( \times 1,000 \) | 267 |
| C.30 | SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) \( \times 500 \) | 267 |
| C.31 | SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) \( \times 100 \) | 267 |
| C.32 | SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) \( \times 500 \) | 267 |
| C.33 | SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) \( \times 700 \) | 267 |
| C.34 | SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) \( \times 3,000 \) | 267 |
| C.35 | SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) \( \times 10,000 \) | 268 |
| C.36 | SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) \( \times 100 \) | 268 |
| C.37 | SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) \( \times 1,500 \) | 268 |
| C.38 | SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) \( \times 6,000 \) | 269 |
| C.39 | SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) \( \times 15,000 \) | 269 |
| C.40 | SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) \( \times 35 \) | 269 |
| C.41 | SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) \( \times 150 \) | 269 |
| C.42 | SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) \( \times 50 \) | 269 |
C.43. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×250 ........................... 269
C.44. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×100 .......................... 270
C.45. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×50 ............................. 270
C.46. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×150 ............................ 270
C.47. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×3,000 ........................... 270
C.48. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×6,000 ............................ 270
C.49. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×7,000 ............................ 270
C.50. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×3,000 ........................... 271
C.51. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×7,000 ............................ 271
C.52. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×30,000 .......................... 271
C.53. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×100 ............................. 271
C.54. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×3,000 ........................... 271
C.55. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×7,000 ............................ 271
C.56. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×3,000 ........................... 272
C.57. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×7,000 ............................ 272
C.58. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×14,000 .......................... 272
C.59. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×18,000 .......................... 272
C.60. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×3,000 ........................... 272
C.61. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×7,000 ............................ 272
C.62. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×14,000 .......................... 273
C.63. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×18,000 .......................... 273
C.64. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×3,000 ........................... 273
C.65. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×7,000 ............................ 273
C.66. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×3,300 ............................ 273
C.67. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×3,000 ........................... 273
C.68. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×7,000 ............................ 274
C.95. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×50......................................... 278
C.96. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×500 ................................... 279
C.97. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×1,000................................. 279
C.98. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×3,000................................. 279
C.99. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×10,000............................... 279
C.100. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×3,000............................... 279
C.101. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×10,000............................... 279
C.102. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×250................................... 280
C.103. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×500................................... 280
C.104. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×1,000................................. 280
C.105. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×3,000................................. 280
C.106. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×10,000............................... 280
C.107. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×70.................................... 280
C.108. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×25..................................... 281
C.109. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×50..................................... 281
C.110. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×100.................................... 281
C.111. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×3,000................................. 281
C.112. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×100.................................... 281
C.113. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×250................................... 281
C.114. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×1,000................................. 282
C.115. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×3,000................................. 282
C.116. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×250................................... 282
C.117. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×3,000................................. 282
C.118. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×500................................... 282
C.119. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×1,000................................. 282
C.121. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×10,000 ......................... 283
C.122. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×500 ................................ 283
C.123. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×1,000 .......................... 283
C.124. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×3,000 .......................... 283
C.125. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×2,000 .......................... 283
C.126. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×10,000 ....................... 284
C.127. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×500 ............................ 284
C.128. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×1,000 .......................... 284
C.129. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×250 ............................. 284
C.130. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×250 ............................. 284
C.131. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×1,000 .......................... 284
C.132. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×3,000 .......................... 285
C.133. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×500 ............................. 285
C.134. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., medial section) ×50 ................................. 285
C.135. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., medial section) ×3,000 ............................... 285
C.136. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., medial section) ×10,000 .............................. 285
C.137. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., medial section) ×40,000 .............................. 285
C.138. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., medial section) ×80,000 .............................. 286
C.139. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., medial section) ×20,000 .............................. 286
C.140. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., medial section) ×30,000 .............................. 286
C.141. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., medial section) ×20,000 .............................. 286
C.142 SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., medial section) ×10,000 .............................. 286
C.143. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., medial section) ×3,700 ............................... 286
C.144. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., medial section) ×10,000 .............................. 287
C.145. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., medial section) ×40,000 .............................. 287
C.146. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., medial section) ×2,500 ............................... 287
C.147. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., medial section) \( \times 5,000 \) ........................................... 287
C.148. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., medial section) \( \times 27,000 \) ...................................... 287
C.149. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., medial section) \( \times 10,000 \) ...................................... 287
C.150. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., medial section) \( \times 40,000 \) ...................................... 288
C.151. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., medial section) \( \times 5,000 \) ...................................... 288
C.152. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) \( \times 25 \) ...................................... 288
C.153. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) \( \times 50 \) ...................................... 288
C.154. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) \( \times 100 \) ................................. 289
C.155. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) \( \times 500 \) .................................... 289
C.156. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) \( \times 1,000 \) ............................. 289
C.157. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) \( \times 500 \) .................................... 289
C.158. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) \( \times 100 \) ................................. 289
C.159. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) \( \times 1,000 \) ............................. 289
C.160. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) \( \times 3,000 \) ............................. 290
C.161. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) \( \times 10,000 \) ............................ 290
C.162. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) \( \times 500 \) ............................... 290
C.163. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) \( \times 3,000 \) ............................. 290
C.164. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) \( \times 1,000 \) ............................. 290
C.165. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) \( \times 5,000 \) ............................. 290
C.166. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) \( \times 500 \) ............................... 291
C.167. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) \( \times 1,000 \) ............................. 291
C.168. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) \( \times 5,000 \) ............................. 291
C.169. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) \( \times 500 \) ............................... 291
C.170. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) \( \times 1,000 \) ............................. 291
C.171. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) \( \times 3,000 \) ............................. 291
C.172. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) \( \times 10,000 \) ........................... 292
C.173. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×25 ........................................ 292
C.174. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×50 ................................. 292
C.175. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×100 .............................. 292
C.176. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×250 .............................. 292
C.177. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×500 .............................. 292
C.178. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×1,000 ........................... 293
C.179. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×3,000 ........................... 293
C.180. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×10,000 .......................... 293
C.181. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×100 ............................. 293
C.182. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×500 ............................. 293
C.183. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×250 ............................. 293
C.184. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×500 ............................. 294
C.185. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×1,000 ........................... 294
C.186. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×3,000 ........................... 294
C.187. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×10,000 .......................... 294
C.188. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×250 ............................. 294
C.189. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×1,000 ........................... 294
C.190. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×3,000 ........................... 295
C.191. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×10,000 .......................... 295
C.192. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., lateral section) ×50 ........................................ 295
C.193. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., lateral section) ×100 ...................................... 295
C.194. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., lateral section) ×250 ...................................... 296
C.195. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., lateral section) ×500 ...................................... 296
C.196. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., lateral section) ×50 ....................................... 296
C.197. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., lateral section) ×100 ...................................... 296
C.198. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., lateral section) ×250 ...................................... 296
C.199. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., lateral section) ×550 ........................................ 296
C.200. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×25 .................................... 297
C.201. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×50 .................................... 297
C.202. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×100 .................................. 297
C.203. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×100 .................................. 297
C.204. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×250 .................................. 298
C.205. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×1,000 ................................. 298
C.206. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×3,000 ................................. 298
C.207. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×10,000 ............................... 298
C.208. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×250 .................................. 298
C.209. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×500 .................................... 298
C.210. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×1,000 ................................. 299
C.211. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×3,000 .................................. 299
C.212. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×10,000 ............................... 299
C.213. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×100 ..................................... 299
C.214. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×250 .................................. 299
C.215. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×500 .................................... 299
C.216. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×1,000 ................................. 300
C.217. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×3,000 .................................. 300
C.218. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×5,000 .................................. 300
C.219. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×10,000 ............................... 300
C.220. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×250 .................................. 300
C.221. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×500 .................................... 300
C.222. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×1,000 ................................. 301
C.223. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×4,300 ................................. 301
C.224. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×10,000 ............................... 301
C.225. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×50................................. 301
C.226. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×100............................ 301
C.227. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×500.......................... 301
C.228. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×1,000...................... 302
C.229. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×3,000...................... 302
C.230. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×10,000..................... 302
C.231. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×20............................ 302
C.232. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×50............................ 302
C.233. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×250......................... 302
C.234. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×100.......................... 303
C.235. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×250......................... 303
C.236. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×500.......................... 303
C.237. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×1,000...................... 303
C.238. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×3,000...................... 303
C.239. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×1,000...................... 303
C.240. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×500.......................... 304
C.241. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×3,000...................... 304
C.242. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×5,000...................... 304
C.243. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×10,000..................... 304
C.244. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×500.......................... 304
C.245. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×100.......................... 304
C.246. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×250......................... 305
C.247. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×250......................... 305
C.248. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×100.......................... 305
C.249. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×1,000...................... 305
C.250. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×1,000...................... 305
C.251. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×3,000.......................... 305
C.252. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×3,000 .................... 306
C.253. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×5,000.................... 306
C.254. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., posterior section) ×50 ............................. 306
C.255. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., posterior section) ×100......................... 306
C.256. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., posterior section) ×250 ......................... 306
C.257. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., posterior section) ×550.......................... 306
C.258. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., posterior section) ×1,000 ....................... 307
C.259. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., posterior section) ×3,000........................ 307
C.260. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., posterior section) ×7,500 ....................... 307
C.261. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., posterior section) ×19,000 ...................... 307
C.262. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., posterior section) ×3,500 ....................... 307
C.263. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., posterior section) ×6,000 ....................... 307
C.264. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., posterior section) ×40,000 ...................... 308
C.265. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., posterior section) ×40,000 ...................... 308
C.266. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., posterior section) ×12,000 ..................... 308
C.267. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., posterior section) ×10,000 ..................... 308
C.268. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., posterior section) ×10,000 ..................... 308
C.269. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., posterior section) ×40,000 ..................... 308
C.270. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., posterior section) ×40,000 ..................... 309
C.271. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., posterior section) ×5,000 ........................ 309
C.272. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., posterior section) ×35,000 ..................... 309
C.273. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., posterior section) ×10,000 ..................... 309
C.274. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., posterior section) ×40,000 ..................... 309
C.275. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., posterior section) ×10,000 ..................... 309
C.276. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., posterior section) ×5,000 ........................ 310
C.277. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., posterior section) ×2,000 ................................. 310
C.278. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., posterior section) ×10,000 .............................. 310
C.279. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., posterior section) ×40,000 ........................... 310
D.1. AFM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section, no treatment, not polished), 5µm×5µm  .......................................................... 311
D.2. AFM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section, no treatment, not polished), 2µm×2µm .......................................................... 311
D.3. AFM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section, no treatment, polished), 2µm×2µm  .......................................................... 312
D.4. AFM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section, no treatment, polished), 2µm×2µm .......................................................... 312
D.5. AFM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section, demineralized for 5 minutes), 2.66µm×2.66µm ........................................ 313
D.6. AFM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section, demineralized for 5 minutes), 2µm×2µm .......................................................... 313
D.7. AFM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section, demineralized for 5 minutes), 1µm×1µm .......................................................... 314
D.8. AFM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section, demineralized for 4 hours), 1µm×1µm .......................................................... 314
D.9. AFM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section, demineralized for 4 hours), 2µm×2µm .......................................................... 315
D.10. AFM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section, demineralized for 4 hours), 1µm×1µm .......................................................... 315
D.11. AFM image of OI human femur (longi., anterior section, no treatment, not polished), 1µm×1µm .......................................................... 316
D.12. AFM image of OI human femur (longi., anterior section, no treatment, not polished), 5µm×5µm .......................................................... 316
D.13. AFM image of OI human femur (longi., anterior section, no treatment, not polished), 1µm×1µm .......................................................... 317
D.14. AFM image of OI human femur (transverse, anterior section, no treatment, polished), 5µm×5µm .......................................................... 317
D.15. AFM image of OI human femur (transverse, anterior section, no treatment, polished), 2µm×2µm .......................................................... 318
xxxxviii
D.16. AFM image of OI human femur (transverse, anterior section, no treatment, polished), 1µm×1µm.................................................................................................................. 318

D.17. AFM image of OI human femur (transverse, anterior section, no treatment, polished), 1µm×1µm.................................................................................................................. 319

D.18. AFM image of OI human femur (longi., anterior section, no treatment, polished), 2µm×2µm.................................................................................................................. 319

D.19. AFM image of OI human femur (longi., anterior section, demineralized for 5 minutes), 5µm×5µm.................................................................................................................. 320

D.20. AFM image of OI human femur (longi., anterior section, demineralized for 5 minutes), 2µm×2µm.................................................................................................................. 320

D.21. AFM image of OI human femur (longi., anterior section, demineralized for 5 minutes), 1µm×1µm.................................................................................................................. 321

D.22. AFM image of OI human femur (longi., anterior section, demineralized for 5 minutes), 2µm×2µm.................................................................................................................. 321

D.23. AFM image of OI human femur (longi., anterior section, demineralized for 5 minutes), 1µm×1µm.................................................................................................................. 322
CHAPTER 1. INTRODUCTION

Section 1.2 is adapted from a book chapter, Chapter 2: Biomimetics: Inspiration from the Structural Organization of Biological Systems, Kalpana S. Katti, Chunju Gu and Dinesh R. Katti, Natural Polymers: Volume 1: Composites, 2012, 1, 8-36.

1.1. Bone

The natural world provides us with a multitude of examples of materials that are perfectly adapted to fulfil a specific functional role with durability, strength, and mechanisms of programmed self-assembly and biodegradability. Bone is a representative of these materials. Bone can be regarded as a tissue or material with a particular capacity for growth, a distinctive chemical composition, and unique properties as a substance. Meanwhile, as an organ, with its distinctive structure and function, bone provides support and movement throughout a lifetime. All mammals share the same mechanisms for bone growth, repair, and nourishment as well as identical microscopic components of bone. The arrangement and shape of bones reflect the evolutionary heritage of organisms.

Three types of bone cells are responsible for bone metabolism (1). One is osteoblasts, which secrete new bone, and one is osteoclasts, which break bone down. After osteoclast-mediated resorption of the existing bone, osteoblasts lay down new bone matrix to be entrapped and become osteocytes inside. The cellular activities of bone modeling and remodeling determine the composition and structure of bone. Bone modeling refers to the deposition of new

---

1 Section 1.2 in this chapter was co-authored by Chunju Gu, Kalpana Katti, and Dinesh Katti. Chunju Gu had primary responsibility for collecting references and drafting this section. Kalpana Katti and Dinesh Katti revised this section.
bone, while bone remodeling refers to the resorption of old bone followed by the formation of new Haversian system. Bone remodeling usually occurs to maintain bone strength by removal of microdamage. After completion of growth, bone modeling continues in adulthood modestly to increase bone size further, whereas bone remodeling occurs lifelong to reshape the bone in response to functional demands. Osteocytes serve as a detector of microdamage, and their death by apoptosis may activate or signal osteoclasts to start the remodeling process (2). The metabolic balance regulated by the bone cells form the assembly of collagen molecules and mineral phase in a unique hierarchical structure, which impart both stiffness and toughness to bone. This rather unusual combination of material properties provides both rigidity and resistance against fracture (3). In this way, bone provides skeletal stability, support and protection of vital organs and also heals itself through remodeling process. The unique structure and mechanical properties of bone have drawn much attention.

Bone refers to a family of materials having in common, mineralized collagen fibril, a basic building block; however, the structural organization of the fibril is different in different bone types. For example, dentin, cementum, and mineralized tendon are also included in the family of bone, and the composition and organization of their mineralized collagen fibrils are different (4). Each healthy adult possesses in total 206 pieces of bones with different shapes, including long bones, such as humerus, radius, ulna, femur, tibia, fibula, metacarpals and metatarsals, and flat bones, such as pelvis, scapula and skull (Curry 2002 p195). Disregarding the different shapes, bone is generally mechanically divided by compact bone and cancellous bone (5).

The chemical analysis of bone shows that there are three chief components in bone: collagen, mineral, and water. Collagen accounts for nearly 1/3 and mineral accounts for nearly
2/3 of the dry weight of bone matrix (1). The water component is on average 10-12wt% of
cortical bone and 20% of the bone matrix (6). The crystals of mineral secrete and grow in the
triple helical collagen fibers, and replace some of the water while mineralization takes place. The
typical composition of human cortical bone is listed in Table 1.1.

Table 1.1. Composition of human cortical bone (7).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Components</th>
<th>Weight percentage (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hydroxyapatite (HAP)</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type I collagen</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ions and Non-collagenous proteins</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1.2. Structure of bone

Research on the structure of bone dates back to the early 17th century when the
compound microscope was invented. Clopton Havers is generally credited with the first
description of the porous nature of bone in 1691, but due to the poor quality of the magnifying
lenses, the initial descriptions dealt primarily with the canal system and the “laminar” structure
of bone without the presence of osteonal bone. In the 18th and 19th century, some observations
were described and defined in detail such as the Haversian system of lamellae, and the
orientation and disposition of lacunae and canaliculi (8). By utilizing polarized light microscopy,
Schmidt found that the c crystallographic axis is well aligned with the collagen fibrils (9). The
greater detailed work came after the invention of scanning electron microscopy (SEM) and
transmission electron microscopy (TEM) in 1930, which gave people the ability to examine
structures on the nanometer scale. With the help of these high resolution instruments and other
techniques such as X-ray diffraction, polarized optical microscopy, sonic velocity, as well as
mechanical tests, the hierarchical structure of bone was discovered and depicted. Atomic force
microscopy (AFM), which appeared in 1980, makes it possible to investigate the structure of bone in the ambient environment on the nanometer scale (10-12). Although the overall structure from nano to macro scales of bone has been extensively studied, it is still far from ending.

Bone components are assembled in a unique hierarchical structure. Hierarchical materials contain structural elements which themselves have recognizable structure. At each level of the structural hierarchy, one may model the material as a continuum for the purpose of analysis (13). Bone has been described in terms of up to 6 or 7 hierarchical levels of organization from nanoscale collagen and mineral to macroscale femur bone (4, 14), as shown in Figure 1.1.

![Diagram of hierarchical organization of a human femur bone from macro- to nanoscale](image)

Figure 1.1. Hierarchical organization of a human femur bone from macro- to nanoscale. (a) Macroscale organ level—human femur bone. (b) Macroscale tissue level—osteon. (c) Microscopic level—bone lamellae (adapted from (15, 16)). (d) Mesoscopic level—fiber bundle. (e) Nanoscale level—mineralized fibril. (f) Molecular level—collagen molecule and mineral particle (adapted from (14)).
1.2.1. Level 1: Collagen fibrils and minerals (molecular and nanometer scales)

Collagen type I accounts for nearly 90% of its total organic content. Type I collagen molecules, also called triple helices (Figure 1.2a), are supercoiled assemblies of three polypeptide chains-- two identical \( \alpha_1 \)-chains and one \( \alpha_2 \)-chain, each with over 1000 amino acid residues. The main part of a collagen chain consists of Gly-X-Y repeats, in which \( X \) and \( Y \) can be any amino acid, but are frequently the amino acids proline and hydroxyproline. A triple-helical molecule is cylindrically shaped, with an average diameter of about 1.5nm, and lengths of 300nm. (Figure 1.2a) (15). Besides the main helical part, collagen triple helices are also comprised of short nonhelical end sequences called telopeptides with both N and C terminal ends. Telopeptides account for 2% of the molecule and are critical for fibril formation in the self-assembly process (17).

During the formation of a fibril, the collagen spontaneously self-assembles into cross-striated fibrils that occur in the extracellular matrix of connective tissues. The fibrils are stabilized by covalent cross-linking (Figure 1.2b), which is initiated by oxidative deamination of specific lysine and hydroxylysine residues in collagen by lysyl oxidase (17). The intermolecular cross-linking provides the fibrillar matrices with various mechanical properties such as tensile strength and viscoelasticity. Both high-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC) and Fourier Transform Infrared (FTIR) have been frequently adopted to cross-link analysis (18).
Mineral primarily consists of poorly crystalline nonstoichiometric carbonated hydroxyapatite (dahllite) which has a plate-shaped hexagonal crystal structure. Bone crystallites are probably the smallest biogenic crystals. They are only 1.5-4 nm thick, 25 nm wide, and 50 nm long on average (4), but we still know very little about the atomic structure. The size of the mineral crystallites is smaller than the “Griffith length” necessary for cracks to spread (19). The c-axis of the unit cells of these crystallites in bone is usually aligned parallel with the long axis of the adjacent collagen fibers (20); but the main orientation changes a small angle to the long axis over a few micrometers (21). By AFM, many of these mineral plates appear to be aligned, forming larger aggregates (475–600 nm long × 75–90 nm thick) that also retain collagen periodicity along their exposed edges (12). The precision with which they can be laid down allows exquisite adaptations to the loads falling on the skeletons. The factors preventing crystal growth beyond the favorable thickness of 3 nm are suggested to be citrate ions that bound to the apatite surface (22).

1.2.2. Level 2: Mineralized fibril (sub-micro scale)

The triple-helical collagen molecules assemble into the fibril in a staggered arrangement. Within the fibril there is a linear shift of ~67nm (D-period) between neighboring molecules. D-period is divided by overlap and gap, where overlap is around 27nm and gap is 40nm (shown in
Robinson and Watson (20, 23) pioneered TEM study and reported the 68-nm banding pattern in collagen fibrils. The assembly of collagen molecules into fibrils is an entropy-driven process, driven by the loss of solvent molecules from the surface of protein molecules, resulting in assemblies with a circular cross section, which minimizes the surface area/volume ratio of the final assembly (17).

Mineralized fibrils are the basic building blocks of bone. As shown in the Figure 1.1f, minerals are intimately associated with the collagen framework in which they form, resulting in a highly complex but ordered mineral-organic composite material. Studies of crystal growth show that crystals are first formed in the gap, and then they continue to grow and penetrate into the overlap zone, thus pushing aside the triple-helical collagen molecules, and even breaking cross-linking and other bonds (24). Because the density of crystals is higher in the gap region, a periodic mineral density profile with around 67nm spacing is easily observed by electron microscopy, as shown in Figure 1.3. Figure 1.3 also shows that the width of a mineralized fibril is about 100nm.

Figure 1.3. SEM image of staggered arrangement of mineralized fibrils.
It is also important to mention that the spaces between mineralized collagen fibrils (extrafibrillar) are filled with noncollageneous macromolecules and minerals. The extrafibrillar volume is at least 60% of the total, while the fibrils are no more than 40%. More of the mineral appears to be extrafibrillar than within the fibrils, and cemented together by noncollagenous organic matter (25, 26).

1.2.3. Level 3: Fibrillar arrays (micro-scale)

The mineralized fibrils are self-organized into fiber bundles along their length and the bundles may fuse with neighboring bundles. How the mineralized fibrils are aligned is of great interest, which leads to a great difference of mechanical properties. As shown in Figure 1.4, two arrangements are suggested. One has an arrangement of mineralized collagen fibrils aligned both with respect to crystal layers and fibril axes. The other arrangement of mineralized collagen fibrils is with only the fibril axes aligned (4). Sonic velocity measurements in three orthogonal directions of macroscopic specimens show significant differences (27), implying that orthotropic order at the fibril level may well extend to millimeter distances.

(a) (b)

Figure 1.4. Schematic illustration of the arrangement of mineralized collagen fibrils aligned both with respect to crystal layers and fibril axes. (a) Orthotropic symmetry arrangement. (b) Transversal isotropic arrangement (adapted from (4)).
1.2.4. **Level 4: Fibrillar array patterns (micro-scale)**

The fibril bundles continue to be organized into layers or lamellae with a few microns thickness, and there in turn are arranged in a variety of ways into higher-order structures depending on the bone type. Four of the most common patterns are presented in Figure 1.5. In a parallel array pattern (Figure 1.5a), all the fibrils are parallel to each other. In a woven array pattern (Figure 1.5b), individual fibrils or fibril bundles are randomly organized. A radial fibril array (Figure 1.5d) is characteristic of the bulk of dentin, which also belongs to bone family (4).

Plywood-like structures (Figure 1.5c) are common in nature, which is believed to have a structure-function relationship (15). SEM and TEM studies showed that lamellar bone is made up of alternating collagen-rich and collagen–poor layers, all having an interwoven arrangement of fibers (28). The successive layers in a thin/thick lamellar unit proceeded by an angle of roughly 30° from one layer to the next (29).

![Figure 1.5](image)

**Figure 1.5.** Four most common fibril array patterns with SEM images of fractured surfaces and schematic illustrations (not drawn to scale) of the basic organizational motifs. (a) Parallel fibrils array. (b) Woven fibrils array. (c) Plywood-like structure present in lamellar. (d) Radial fibril arrays (adapted from (4)).
1.2.5. Level 5: Osteon (micro-scale)

The osteon, as shown in Figure 1.6, also called Harversian system, is the fundamental structural unit of compact bone. Each osteon consists of concentric layers, or lamellae that surround a central canal, the Haversian canal. The Haversian canal, parallel to the long axis of the bone, contains the bone's nerve and blood supplies. Between adjoining osteons there are angular intervals that are occupied by interstitial lamellae. These lamellae are remnants of osteons, the greater parts of which have been destroyed (1). The osteon takes part in the remodeling process, whereby tunnels are eroded and then filled in again with cylinders of bone.

![Osteon SEM micrograph]

Figure 1.6. SEM micrograph of an osteon.

1.2.6. Level 6: Cortical (compact) and cancellous (spongy or trabecular) bone (meso-scale)

Cortical bone, synonymous with compact bone, is solid, with the only porosity for canaliculi, osteocyte lacunae, blood channels and erosion cavities. Cancellous bone, synonymous with spongy or trabecular bone, has porosity that is easily visible to the naked eye, as shown in Figure 1.1 (a). Usually, the bone material that has a porosity of about 25% or more is considered to be cancellous, and if less is cortical (30). Bone serves a protective function by the construction
of two cortical plates separated by intervening cancellous bone. This construction is beneficial for the maximum absorption of energy with minimum trauma to bone itself. Microstructurally, there is no difference between normal cortical and cancellous bones (8).

1.3. Bone mechanics

The structure of bone is modulated by genetic, mechanical, nutritional, and hormonal patterning throughout a lifetime (31). According to Wolff’s law, bone adapts itself to be stronger in positions subjected to higher loads (32). Due to the remodeling process, bone is a highly mechanically anisotropic material at both the macroscopic (organ) and microscopic (material) level. The field of bone mechanics has been at a very sophisticated level where mechanical properties of various bone specimens are available for many anatomic sites. Bone properties are usually thought to be influenced by many factors, such as tissue composition, amount of secondary mineralization, collagen crosslinking, and the presence of microdamage (33).

As mentioned earlier, bone consists of nano-sized mineral platelets and collagen proteins. These components have extremely different mechanical properties: the mineral is stiff and brittle, while the protein is softer but also tougher than the mineral. However, the composite combines the optimal properties of both components. This rather unusual combination of material properties provides both rigidity and resistance against fracture (3). In addition, the arrangement of the constituents leads to anisotropic property and heterogeneity of bone tissue as well. The mechanical properties of bone tissue varies from type to type. Although the cortical bone was reported having similar nanomechanical properties as trabecular bone (34), the nanostructure of bone tissue differ substantially among lamellar type, anatomical sites and individuals (35). As pointed out by Gao et al. (19), bone is much less sensitive to flaws because
of its hierarchical structure. The hierarchical design distributes stresses throughout the levels of structure, thereby minimizing dangerous stress concentrations that could precipitate failure and fracture. The hierarchical feature of bone controls the fracture properties, particularly the toughness (5). Because the collagen fibers in neighboring lamellae are oriented at an angle to each other, fracture surfaces show considerable roughness. The work of driving a crack across the interfaces consisting of the plates, sheets, and Haversian systems of bone is much greater than it would be if the material were homogeneous (36). Therefore, besides the hierarchical structure, the mechanical properties of bone at different length scales and their relationship with structure are of great interest. Although the study of bone mechanics advanced in the 1970s, it was not until the beginning of the 1980s that its study really started off and it has been driven by advances in techniques (30). In addition to experimental work, simulation has also been conducted through different length scales to investigate the bone mechanics.

1.3.1. Macro-scale mechanical properties of bone

There have been a great amount of studies on mechanical properties of bone in the last 50 years (5). The early researches are focused on macro-scale mechanical properties of bone, where bulk bone pieces are applied to different load forms (Figure 1.7). The mechanical properties at the macro level are mainly: elastic properties (mainly Young’s modulus), strength (in tension, compression, shear, and torsion), fatigue, fracture mechanics as well as dynamic mechanical properties (creep and stress-relaxation).
The elastic properties of bone can be measured by two main methods: (1) applying a load to a specimen and calculating the elastic properties from the resulting deformation (mechanical testing) and (2) measuring the velocity of sound waves in bone (ultrasonic testing). Mechanical testing is more straightforward and can investigate the effect of strain rate on mechanical properties. Ultrasonic testing is less straightforward and has some difficulties in testing wet specimens, but it is a nondestructive technique (37). Both mechanical testing and ultrasonic methods can conduct multiscale assessment of bone elastic properties. Ultrasound method has the scalability of the acoustic wavelength from 6mm at 500 kHz down to 0.5 μm at 2 GHz. The low frequency methods (500 kHz to 10 MHz) are widely used in clinical devices to assess bone quality at the macro-scale, while the higher frequency method (50 MHz to 2 GHz), scanning acoustic microscopy (SAM), is used to investigate bone microarchitecture (38).

The elastic strength of human cortical bone is anisotropic because of its microstructure. Cortical bone is both stronger and stiffer when subjected to a load longitudinally along its long axis (Table 1.2) (39). This property results from its evolutionary adaptation to most efficiently
resist the largely uniaxial stresses. Human femoral cortical bone also shows both anisotropic and asymmetrical ultimate stresses that it is stronger in the longitudinal direction and also stiffer in compression than in tension (Table 1.3). In addition, it is weak in shear and loaded transversely in tension (Table 1.3).

Table 1.2. Elastic properties of human femoral cortical bone (39).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Modulus (GPa)</th>
<th>Longitudinal</th>
<th>17.9 (3.9)*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Transverse</td>
<td>10.1 (2.4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Shear modulus</td>
<td>3.3 (0.4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poisson’s ratio</td>
<td>Longitudinal</td>
<td>0.4 (0.16)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Transverse</td>
<td>0.62 (0.26)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Standard deviations are given in parentheses.

Table 1.3. Ultimate stresses of human femoral cortical bone (39).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Longitudinal stress (MPa)</th>
<th>Tensiom</th>
<th>135 (15.6)*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Compression</td>
<td>205 (17.3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transverse stress (MPa)</td>
<td>Tensiom</td>
<td>53 (10.7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Compression</td>
<td>131 (20.7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shear stress (MPa)</td>
<td></td>
<td>65 (4.0)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Standard deviations are given in parentheses.

Meanwhile, bone has extremely poor fatigue resistance. Fully reversed cyclic loading to one half of the yield strain causes fatigue fracture in 1000 cycles (40). Cyclic loading can induce modulus reductions accompanied by structural damage such as microcracks very early in the loading history (41). Bone specimens exhibit an almost immediate loss of stiffness and an increase in stress/strain hysteresis (40). Fracture mechanics has been applied to bone as a measure of the inherent resistance to crack initiation and propagation. Fracture toughness can be
evaluated from a precracked specimen, assuming linear elastic fracture mechanics, in terms of critical stress intensity factor, $K_c$, and critical strain energy release rate $G_c$ (42). The fracture toughness is influenced by strain rate: the fracture toughness decreases by about 33% as the strain rate increases (by about four orders of magnitude) (43). The crack deflection at the osteonal interfaces adds an extrinsic toughness to bone at low strain rate (43).

Bone is also considered as a viscoelastic material, though the effect of loading rate on modulus and strength is only moderate (44). The strain-rate sensitivity, creep and relaxation behavior, are usually investigated as its viscoelastic behavior (45). At macro-scale, this viscoelastic response is measured by some designed-systems (46-48) or a dynamic mechanical analyzer (DMA) (45, 49-53).

### 1.3.2. Meso-scale mechanical properties of bone

Currey JD (30) classified cancellous and cortical bones as meso-scale features of bone. However, there is no specific technique for this length scale. Turner CH et al. (34) used acoustic microscopy and nanoindentation methods and found that: the Young’s modulus of cortical bone in the longitudinal direction is about 40% greater than the Young’s modulus in the transverse direction; the Young’s modulus of cancellous bone tissue is slightly higher than the transverse Young’s modulus of cortical bone, but significantly lower than the longitudinal Young’s modulus of cortical bone. At the end of long bones, the cancellous bone distributes loads away from the joint and into the cortical bone, which has a much smaller cross-sectional area than the joint cartilage surfaces. Thus, the transitional cancellous bone protects the delicate cartilage from larger impact stresses from the cortical bone (30).
1.3.3. Micro-scale mechanical properties of bone

The macro-scale mechanical properties are on average features for bulk bone tissue. It is often appropriate to assume average mechanical properties from cortical bone; however, in some cases it may be necessary to consider the heterogeneity that can arise from variations in microstructure. Microindentation hardness testing, more commonly called microhardness testing, is widely used to study fine scale changes in hardness of materials. Hardness values are generally calculated as the peak force divided by the area of contact (as shown in Equation 1.1), the contact area differs between the test techniques.

\[
\text{Hardness} = \frac{\text{Peak Force}}{\text{Contact Area}} \tag{1.1}
\]

The hardness values usually decrease as the peak force increases; therefore, the peak force is always mentioned in the test. With hardness values, modulus can be derived with the following equation (54):

\[
E^d = 0.58 + 0.36H_v \tag{1.2}
\]

The most commonly used indenter points are Vickers and Knoop. The Vickers indenter is a regular pyramid with equal diagonals, while the Knoop indenter has diagonals of two different lengths. Knoop indenter is more sensitive to elastic anisotropy than the Vickers, and Knoop indenter is also more applicable to very thin materials (55). The typical residual impression long diagonal of Knoop indenter can be about 200µm while that of Vickers is about 70µm (55). Microindentation has been extensively used to measure the micro-scale mechanical properties of different anatomical positions of bone tissue (56-60), and it has the ability to discriminate between damaged and intact human bone tissue (61). Recently, a reference point indentation (RPI) instrument, which can perform bone microindentation testing, has even been developed for
measuring bone tissue mechanical properties in vivo and is expected for clinical application (62-64). This instrument can assess bone quality with little harm to the body.

As mentioned earlier, SAM can be used to evaluate the elastic properties of bone at micro-scale level. Turner CH et al. (34) compared SAM (30-60 µm resolution) and nanoindentation (NI) (1-5 µm resolution) methods and obtained consistent results from these two methods (34).

Experimental testing can give straightforward mechanical properties of bone specimens; however, in many instances, experimental testing on humans and cadavers is not always feasible. In comparison, different modeling and simulation methods provide alternatives for studying mechanical properties of bone. Among these methods, finite element analysis (FEA) has become a popular and powerful tool used by biomechanics and orthopedics researchers over the last 30 years (65). Finite element analysis can mimic the bone system in CT or µCT datasets and integrates density and geometry information to predict the response of bone under a variety of loading conditions and estimate bone strength parameters (66-81). The work done by FEA combined with experimental work contributes to the studies of damage mechanism, fracture, bone disease, and bone mechanics.

1.3.4. **Sub-micro-scale mechanical properties of bone**

In recent years, considerable progress has been possible in the understanding of bone properties, mainly due to new methodology in micromechanics: nanoindentation (NI), in situ electron scanning microscopy (SEM) nanoindentation, and atomic force microscopy (AFM). It becomes possible that micro-scale and nano-scale stiffness and hardness of bone can be measured excluding the artifacts from higher levels of hierarchy (3). Nanoindentation usually probes materials into less than 1 micron to several microns, therefore, it is usually regarded as a
technique acquiring sub-micro-scale mechanical properties. The micro-scale measurements correspond to osteonal level of bone structure, while the sub-micro-scale measurements correspond to lamellar level. Nanoindentation and micro-hardness testing differ in a couple of ways, but the results are comparable when tip geometries used are similar so that similar strains are provided in the material when testing, such as the Vickers and Berkovich shaped tips (both are pyramidal-shaped).

Nanoindentation emerged in the early 1980s from improving microindentation methods by enhancing force and depth sensing capabilities (82). Later, NI technique combined the AFM imaging so that it provides more accurate position selection on the sample. It was originally developed to investigate coatings, and it was over a decade before the first work on bone NI was published (83). In 1992, Oliver and Pharr established a comparatively mature method to determine hardness and elastic modulus from indentation load-displacement data of NI (84). The indentation load-displacement data are shown schematically in Figure 1.8, and then are analyzed according to the equation (1.3)

\[ S = \frac{dP}{dh} = \frac{2}{\sqrt{\pi}} E_r \sqrt{A} \]  

(1.3)

where \( S = dP/dh \) is the experimentally measured stiffness of linear portion of the unloading data. \( P, h, E_r, \) and \( A \) are force, displacement, reduced modulus, and the projected area of the elastic contact, respectively. \( A \) relates to \( h \) and the indenter geometry. Then, elastic modulus of the sample can be calculated according to the equation (1.4)

\[ \frac{1}{E_r} = \left( \frac{1 - v^2}{E} \right) + \left( \frac{1 - v_t^2}{E_t} \right) \]  

(1.4)
where $E_i$ and $\nu_i$ are Young’s modulus and Poisson’s ratio for the nanoindenter and $E$ and $\nu$ are for the specimen. The hardness can be computed from its normal definition:

$$H = \frac{P_{\text{max}}}{A} \quad (1.5)$$

where $P_{\text{max}}$ is the peak indentation load.

![Figure 1.8. A schematic representation of load versus indenter displacement data for an indentation experiment. The quantities shown are $P_{\text{max}}$: the peak indentation load; $h_{\text{max}}$: the indenter displacement at peak load; $h_f$: the final depth of the contact impression after unloading and $S$: the initial unloading stiffness.](image)

Nowadays, nanoindentation is probably the most important tool for the assessment of the elastic modulus and hardness of bone tissue (66, 85-91). Up to now, hundreds of papers have been published using nanoindentation to study bone mechanical properties. It enables an improved understanding of the mechanical properties correlation with microstructure of bone tissue. For example, significant modulus variations were found on opposing sides of the osteonal canal for the same lamella (88). However, there are variations in reported values for elastic modulus and hardness according to different sample conditions (wet or dry), different sample sources, and different experimental conditions, such as different tips and different loads are used.
The variation can also arise from the heterogeneity of bone, resulting in local difference in composition and multiscale organization of the bone volume element tested. Hence, it is essential to carefully design the experimental protocol as well as being aware of the limitations of the technique during interpretation of acquired data (92).

Besides traditional NI, in situ SEM nanoindentation also emerged to perform nanoindentation while capture high-resolution images simultaneously to watch the deformation behavior of materials closely. The use of in situ SEM nanoindentation will be introduced in Chapter 4 in detail.

1.3.5. Nano-scale mechanical properties of bone

Atomic force microscope (AFM) is well known for probing surface images of materials in ambient environment or even in buffered saline liquids that is very close to its physiological state. In addition, AFM can also be conducted to study the mechanical properties of materials at nano scale. Using contact mode, AFM cantilevers have been used for indentation experiments on isolated collagen fibrils in a dried state and reported values for the elastic modulus of 3.7 to 11.5 GPa (93). Recently, AFM stiffness mapping has been developed for bone study (94, 95).

Besides AFM, modulus mapping (MM) have also been proposed, combining a nanoindenter with an AFM x-y stage to map material properties over a surface. The introduction and experiments about MM will be discussed in Chapter 4 in detail.

These techniques are sometimes utilized together to investigate the mechanical properties at different length scales: (1) the mineralized fibril level (~100 nm); (2) the lamellar level (~6 µm); and (3) the osteon level (up to ~30µm). AFM, NI, and microindentation are applied as techniques to these three levels, respectively (96). The mechanical properties tested are also related to the conditions of the bone samples. The mechanical properties under dry conditions are
higher by 30-50% compared to wet conditions (96, 97). Table 1.4 and Table 1.5 list the mechanical properties of both wet and dry metacarpal horse bone specimens acquired using AFM, NI, and microindentation.

Table 1.4. AFM mechanical measurement at mineralized fibril level of bone tissue (96).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Dry conditions</th>
<th>Wet conditions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stiffness (N/m)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transverse plane</td>
<td>534 ± 69</td>
<td>291 ± 124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stiffness (N/m)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Longitudinal plane</td>
<td>513 ± 86</td>
<td>334 ± 88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p-Value (t-test between two planes)</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>0.04</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Besides experimental work, numerous modeling studies such as molecular dynamics have been performed on the deformation mechanisms of collagen fibril (98-106) and collagen-HAP interactions in bone (103, 107, 108). Molecular dynamics studies addressed that: (1) the importance of crosslinks to the mechanical properties of collagen fibril (98, 100); (2) the shape of mineral crystals can be a strong determinant of the nanoscale strength of bone (109); and (3) the nanomechanics of collagen fibril has its own hierarchy (101, 102). These studies can help to understand bone mechanics at nano-scale and atomic-scale levels.

1.4. **Bone diseases and bone quality characterization**

The quality of bone refers to its ability to perform its functions. The quality contains important determinants such as intrinsic properties of bone matrix, bone architecture, turnover, and bone disease. Bone metabolic disease refers to the medical conditions that damage the skeleton and make bone weak and prone to fracture. Studies of bone diseases help to understand the relative importance of each constituent of the bone composition and its interactions with
other constituents as well as bone structure. Bone diseases can be caused by disorders of collagen (osteogenesis imperfecta and Paget’s disease of bone), mineral content, composition and distribution (fluorosis and osteomalacia); diseases of high remodeling (postmenopausal osteoporosis, hyperparathyroidism, and hyperthyroidism) and low remodeling (osteopetrosis, pycnodysotosis); and other reasons (idiopathic male osteoporosis, corticosteroid-induced osteoporosis) (110).

Table 1.5. Nanoindentation measurements at lamellar level and micronanoindentation measurements at osteonal level (96).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Dry conditions</th>
<th>Wet conditions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>E(GPa)</td>
<td>H(GPa)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nanoindentation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transverse plane</td>
<td>20.8 ± 2.1</td>
<td>0.61 ± 0.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Longitudinal plane</td>
<td>17.6 ± 2.1</td>
<td>0.54 ± 0.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p-Value (t-test between two planes)</td>
<td>$6 \times 10^{-12}$</td>
<td>0.004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microindentation*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transverse plane</td>
<td>18.6 ± 1.7</td>
<td>50.5 ± 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Longitudinal plane</td>
<td>17.0 ± 1.4</td>
<td>46 ± 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p-Value (t-test between two planes)</td>
<td>0.02</td>
<td>0.09</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* For microindentation, E is derived modulus ($E_d=0.58+0.36H_v$) (54) and H is Vickers hardness under 10 gr loading ($H_v10$).

The most common bone disease is osteoporosis, which is characterized by progressive loss of bone mass and by deterioration of bone microarchitecture and quality, resulting in a reduction in bone strength. This combination increases bone fragility, leading to a greater propensity for fracture. This bone disease is particularly endemic in postmenopausal osteoporotic women. The cause of this disease is the imbalance in the skeletal turnover that bone resorption exceeds bone formation (111). Bisphosphonate has been proven beneficial for improving bone
mineral density and decreasing incidence of new vertebral fractures by inhibiting bone resorption and lowering bone turnover (112, 113). Adequate calcium and vitamin D intake is also suggested to be crucial for developing optimal peak bone mass and preserving bone mass throughout life (114).

Paget's disease of bone is a chronic disorder that can disrupt bone remodeling process and result in enlarged and misshapen bones. Paget's disease of bone most commonly occurs in the pelvis, skull, spine and legs. Typically, Paget’s disease is localized, affecting only one or a few bones, as opposed to osteoporosis, which usually affects all the bones in the body. The risk of Paget's disease of bone increases with age. The risk also increases if family members have the disorder. Complications of Paget's disease of bone can include broken bones, hearing loss and pinched nerves in the spine. Bisphosphonate is also the mainstay of treatment for this disease (115).

1.4.1. Osteogenesis imperfecta

Among all of the bone diseases, osteogenesis imperfect (OI) is our greatest interest since it is a disease with direct defects in collagen molecules and this disease provides an interesting platform for investigating how alterations of collagen at the molecular level cause changes in the structure of bone. Osteogenesis Imperfecta is a genetic disorder characterized by substantial bone fragility and osteopenia. It affects about 1:5000-10000 individuals and is a rare and potentially incapacitating disease (116). In 1979, Sillence classified OI into 4 types according to a system based on mode of inheritance, clinical picture, and information from X-rays: type I (mild OI with bone fragility and blue sclerae), type II (perinatal lethal), type III (progressive deforming), and type IV (normal sclerae and mild deformity) (117). These four types are entirely designated for mutations in COL1A1 or COL1A2, causing autosomal dominant OI (118, 119). Because of
specific clinical/radiological and/or histological features and the discovery of rare recessive genetic causes of OI, this classification was expanded into 7 by Rauch et al. in 2004 (120), and then it was further expanded into 11 by Forlino et al. in 2011, as shown in Table 1.6 (118).

Table 1.6. OI Nosology (118).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OI type</th>
<th>Inheritance</th>
<th>Phenotype</th>
<th>Gene Defect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Classical Sillence Types</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>AD</td>
<td>Mild</td>
<td>Null COLIA1 allele</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>AD</td>
<td>Lethal</td>
<td>COLIA1/ COLIA2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>AD</td>
<td>Progressive Deforming</td>
<td>COLIA1/ COLIA2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>AD</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>COLIA1/ COLIA2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unknown Etiology</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>AD</td>
<td>Distinctive Histology</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI</td>
<td>AR?</td>
<td>Mineralization Defect</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3-Hydroxylation Defects</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII</td>
<td>AR</td>
<td>Severe (Hypomorphic)</td>
<td>CRTAP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Lethal (Null)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIII</td>
<td>AR</td>
<td>Severe to Lethal</td>
<td>LEPRE1 (P3H1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IX</td>
<td>AR</td>
<td>Moderate to Severe</td>
<td>PPIB (CyPB)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defects</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X</td>
<td>AR</td>
<td>Severe to Lethal</td>
<td>SERPINHI (HSP47)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XI</td>
<td>AR</td>
<td>Progressive Deforming</td>
<td>FKBPO (FKBP65)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Bruck Syndrome?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Inheritance: AD- autosomal dominant; AR- autosomal recessive

The detailed description of OI disease will be discussed in Chapter 3, while the diagnosis and treatment of this disease are briefly discussed here. The typical OI features can be identified using ultrasound clinically; however, if the clinical examination is not definitive, then laboratory tests for OI are appropriate. Laboratory diagnosis of OI relies on two approaches that cultured fibroblasts make either less or abnormal type I procollagen molecules or identification of a mutation in COL1A1 or COL1A2 (121). For primary OI cases, the tests are categorized as: (1) Collagen Biochemical Test, also referred to as a “skin biopsy”, examines collagen proteins made
by skin cells (fibroblasts); (2) Collagen Molecular Testing, also known as “DNA analysis”,
examines the mutation in collagen by sequencing at the gene level. It requires a blood sample
(116). Both tests can use a skin sample. The method of cultured dermal fibroblasts now has been
supplanted by direct DNA sequence analysis which takes 10-30 days to complete (122).
Collagen screening and DNA-based testing can be performed at the University of Washington
(www.pathology.washington.edu/clinical/collagen) and National Institutes of Health, Bethesda,
MD (http://www.oiprogram.nichd.nih.gov/), DNA-based testing is available at the Tulane
University MatrixDNADiagnostic Lab, and Athena Diagnostics.

The treatment of OI disease has been studied for many years. However, there is still no
cure for this genetic disease. Bisphosphonate pamidronate is reported to have a beneficial effect
in children and adolescents with severe OI (123, 124). The mechanism is suggested to be that in
remodeling, bone resorption and formation are coupled and consequently both processes are
inhibited by bisphosphonate pamidronate. However, during modeling of cortical bone,
osteoclasts and osteoblasts are uncoupled, and continuing bone formation can increase cortical
width, whereas the resorption is selectively targeted (125). Therefore, studies have also raised
concerns about high cumulative doses impairing bone modelling and healing, decreasing bone
material quality and mineralization heterogeneity and impairing bone cells (126-129). Recently,
a study on OI mice found excessive activity of transforming growth factor beta (TGF), which is
responsible for coordinating the shaping and reshaping of bone, is. They also found that using an
antibody, which can block TGF, improves whole bone and tissue strength (130). In another
study, a new class of agents targeting the receptor activator of nuclear factor-κB ligand
(RANKL) was also evaluated to improve the density and some geometric and biomechanical
properties of oim/oim bone (131).
Besides bone diseases, aging also affects the composition and mechanical properties of bone. Aging increases the concentration of mature (pyridinium and deoxypyridinium) crosslinks. Bone mineral density (BMD) declines with age in both women and men. Tensile ultimate stress of human cortical bone decreases at a rate of about 2% per decade while tensile ultimate strain decreases at a rate of approximately 10% per decade (132, 133).

1.4.2. Characterization methods of bone quality

Bone quality includes microarchitecture, mineralization, and quality of organic matrix (maturity and crosslinking). Microradiography (MR) was the first technique to quantify the mineral content within cortices and trabeculae (134). MR is very fast, accurate, and simple. However, a disadvantage of MR is that it can only acquire two dimensional images. Then, Computerized tomography (CT), micro-computed tomography (µCT), and quantitative computed tomography (QCT) were developed permitting both 3D (and 2D) reconstructions and volumetric measurements. From clinical perspective, both QCT and Dual-energy X-ray absorptiometry (DXA) can measure bone mineral density. More advanced and sensitive techniques include quantitative backscattered electron imaging (qBEI) (135) and synchrotron radiation micro computed tomography (SRµCT) (136). Both qBEI and SRµCT methods require bone samples to be transiliac bone biopsies. Complimentary information on the bone matrix at identical topographic locations is obtained with other techniques such as small angle and wide-angle X-ray scattering (SAXS/WAXS), NI, scanning acoustic microscopy (SAM), Raman microspectroscopy (RAMAN) and Fourier transform infrared imaging (FTIRI). For clinical use, the characterization of bone quality usually includes CT scan and Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), which can measure the geometry and microstructure of bone. Finite-element analysis, which is an image-based method, can also calculate bone strength (137).
1.5. **Scope of this dissertation**

Given the trends of bone structure and mechanics studies, it is evident that with various emerging techniques, the studies of bone are forwarding to a more nano-scale, atomic-scale, and hierarchical aspect to discover the anatomical position-specific structure and mechanical properties and help to understand bone and bone diseases. However, bone research is still far from the end. Firstly, bone mineral, although many studies have given the formula of bone mineral which is similar to hydroxyapatite and possesses vacancies and ion substitutes, the problem still hovers about the structural OH and its presence in the crystal structure. Besides the molecular structure of bone mineral, some debates are also aroused concerning the crystal structure and heterogeneity of bone mineral, as well as the details of extrafibrillar mineral due to sample preparation problems and instrumentation limits. Secondly, although the collagen sequence is well-understood, the interactions between mineral and collagen is still under study. Thirdly, what is the significance of collagen mutations for initial mineral nucleation and biomineralization? Fourthly, the role of different noncollagenous proteins in the initial nucleation and growth of bone mineral is not well-understood, especially in diseased bones. Therefore, in this doctoral dissertation, Field emission-Scanning probe microscopy (FE-SEM), modulus mapping, in situ FE-SEM nanoindentation, and nanoDMA techniques are utilized to explore the structure and nanomechanical properties and of bone at multi-scales, particularly, nanometer and sub-micro scales. In addition, our group’s multiscale modeling work has also demonstrated the influence of the interactions among different constituents on the mechanics of collagen; the interaction is of our specific interest and studied by using Fourier transform infrared spectroscopy (FTIR). Further, X-ray diffraction (XRD) is used to study the crystal structure of bone mineral as a supplement. Overall, this doctoral dissertation focuses on the study of
molecular bases of bone constituents, bone crystal structure, nanomechanical properties of bone, and OI diseased bone.

This dissertation is organized in the following manner:

- Chapter 1: Introduction
- Chapter 2: This chapter presents SEM images, photoacoustic FTIR spectroscopic study of undisturbed human cortical bone.
- Chapter 3: This chapter presents microstructural (SEM images) and infrared spectroscopic of human cortical bone (anterior region) with osteogenesis imperfect.
- Chapter 4: This chapter presents nanomechanical properties of undisturbed human normal and OI cortical bones (anterior region) measured by modulus mapping and in situ FE-SEM nanoindentation.
- Chapter 5: This chapter presents dynamic nanomechanical behavior of both healthy and OI human cortical bone (anterior regions) using nanoDMA technique.
- Chapter 6: This chapter presents SEM images, FTIR studies of four sections (anterior, medial, posterior, and lateral) of OI human cortical bone and nanomechanical properties of anterior and posterior sections obtained using in situ FE-SEM nanoindentation technique.
- Chapter 7: This chapter summarizes our research work and major conclusions.
- Chapter 8: This chapter describes the major contributions of this work.
- Chapter 9: This chapter discusses some future directions for the research in this field.
1.6. References


33. Boskey AL, Myers ER. Is bone mineral crystal size a significant contributor to "bone quality"? BoneKEy-Osteovision. 2004;1:4-7.


56. Oehman C, Zwierzak I, Baleani M, Viceconti M. Human bone hardness seems to depend on tissue type but not on anatomical site in the long bones of an old subject. Proceedings of the


CHAPTER 2. PHOTOACOUSTIC FTIR SPECTROSCOPIC STUDY OF UNDISTURBED HUMAN CORTICAL BONE

This chapter presents SEM images and photoacoustic FTIR spectroscopic study of undisturbed healthy human cortical bone. Here we find that the stoichiometry of bone mineral is influenced by the interactions between collagen and mineral. The content of this chapter has been published in Gu, C.; Katti, D. R.; Katti, K. S.; Photoacoustic FTIR spectroscopic study of undisturbed human cortical bone. *Spectrochimica acta Part A.* 2013, 103, 25-37.

2.1. Introduction

Bone tissue is composed of collagen fibers, crystals of a calcium-phosphate mineral, hydroxyapatite or cement containing mucopolysaccharides etc., among which collagen, mineral and water are three primary components. Collagen accounts for nearly 1/3 of the dry weight of bone and the mineral accounts for nearly 2/3 of the dry weight of bone matrix (1). The water component is on average 10-12 wt.% of cortical bone (2). As all structural materials in biology, bone exhibits a detailed hierarchical organization (3-5) that spans length scales from nm to mm (6, 7). The collagen found in bone (type I), forms a fibrillar structure consisting of staggered arrangement of collagen molecules with a periodicity of 67 nm (6, 7). The hydroxyapatite crystals are present in the hole-zone between collagen molecules (3-5). The collagen mineral interactions as well as collagen structural behavior have been extensively studied through modeling efforts (8-15). The principle orientation of bone mineral is along the long axis of the...
bone, whereas bone collagen fibers are aligned with alternating fiber orientation in successive lamellae (16).

The human bone mineral is composed of a poorly crystallized apatite, with similar composition to synthetic hydroxyapatite Ca_{10} OH)_{2}(PO_4)_{6}. Hydroxyapatite has a hexagonal crystal structure (space group P6_3/M) (17). However, in contrast to synthetic hydroxyapatite, bone mineral is structurally disordered, and compositionally nonstoichiometric. Synthetic hydroxyapatite prepared in a laboratory is often stoichiometric but hydroxyapatite present in bone is known to be nonstoichiometric (18). In the hydroxyapatite structure, some ions can be replaced, leading to the presence of vacancies. For example, CO_3^{2-} can substitute for either PO_4^{3-} or OH^- ions. The bone crystal structure is primarily maintained by electrostatic cohesion such that bone crystals are more soluble as compared to stoichiometric apatite (19).

Mechanical properties of bone have orientation dependence resulting from preferential orientation of collagen and mineral. It was found that two orders of magnitude change in the fracture energy can be observed depending on the orientation of collagen (20, 21). Using Raman spectral mapping, bone osteonal tissues were studied indicating that, the PO_4^{3-}v1 and amide I vibrations are sensitive to the orientation and the polarization direction of the incident light. This is in accordance with the mineral c-axis and the position of carbonyl in collagen chains, while amide III, v2 and v4 PO_4^{3-} vibrations are observed to be less sensitive to orientation effects (22). It was also shown that the v1 PO_4^{3-} to amide I ratio is indicative of the lamellar bone orientation, and v2 PO_4^{3-} to amide III and CO_3^{2-} to v2 PO_4^{3-} ratios are suggestive of variation in bone composition (23).

As a nondestructive technique, Fourier transform infrared (FTIR) spectroscopy has been extensively used to study the composition and structure of bone tissue by calculating the
lipid/protein ratio, Ca/P ratio, protein/mineral ratio, the crystallinity of the mineral phase (24), crystallinity index (25) as well as collagen cross-link ratio (26). The most widely used mode for FTIR experiments on bone is transmission (TS). TS-FTIR combined with microscopy (27-29) and imaging have been extensively used to study the correlation between the image, spectra and the structure of bone (29-33) as well as different ages (26, 34) and diseases such as osteoporosis (35), osteopetrosis (36), osteomalacia (37), and osteogenesis imperfect (38), etc. TS-FTIR has the highest signal-to-noise ratio, and is useful for quantitative measurements (39). Transmission is the most frequently used mode for infrared spectroscopy and one of the common methods for sample preparation involves fixation, dehydration of bone tissue followed by embedding of the sample in resin that is sectioned using a microtome (25, 26, 33, 34, 40, 41) or directly mixing the sample with Potassium bromide (KBr) powder in a mortar and pestle (24, 42-45). Both sample preparation methods have the potential to influence the water content and interactions between mineral and collagen. Further, fixation of bone specimens prevents bacterial growth and degradation of the specimen before data are collected. However, it was found that formalin fixation had little effect on the collagen, but a significant effect on the mineral structure, while ethanol fixation had the opposite effect (46).

Thus, chemical pretreatment may potentially influence the organic matrix and mineral interaction. For example, literature prior to 2003 indicated that there are almost no hydroxyl groups in bone mineral crystals (47-52). Most of the specimens reported underwent chemical pretreatments and were characterized by FTIR, Raman, Nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) and inelastic neutron-scattering. However, for samples with no pretreatment other than cryogenic grinding it was found that hydroxyl ions could be detected by solid-state NMR spectroscopy and the OH\(^{-}\) content of human cortical bone was roughly 20% of the amount expected in
stoichiometric hydroxyapatite (53). Therefore, techniques of sample preparation are crucial for spectroscopic investigations of bone.

Photoacoustic (PA-) FTIR spectroscopy is commonly used technique due to minimal sample preparation requirements and ability to examine specimen in situ. Recently, this has been particularly useful while investigating nanocomposites of biological origin such as seashells (54) and geological origin such as oil shales (55). In the photoacoustic technique (Figure 2.1), the infrared beam incidents on the sample and excites vibrational motion of molecules which causes the perturbation of coupling gas, thereby generating compression waves in the inert gas in the proximity of the sample which can be detected by a sensitive microphone (56). PA-FTIR is insensitive to surface morphology and capable of measuring spectra of all types of solids without exposure to air or moisture, and also applicable to liquids and gases (57). Therefore, sample preparation of PA mode is faster and easier as compared to that for transmission mode. In addition, as shown in Figure 2.1, the coupling inert gas, helium, has shown to inhibits bacteria growth in bone by displacing oxygen (58). Two modes of data collection are used in PA-FTIR, linear-scan (LS, also called continuous scan or rapid scan), and step-scan (SS). The primary distinction between these methods is the varied or constant modulation frequency for a given wavelength. The expression for the modulation frequency at a certain wavenumber is given by (57).

\[ f = 2v \bar{\nu} \]  

(2.1)

where \( v \) is the velocity of the interferometer mirror (cm/s), and \( \bar{\nu} \) is the wavenumber (cm\(^{-1}\)). Step-scan (SS-PA-FTIR) spectroscopy measures samples’ absorbance spectrum directly with a controllable sampling depth by keeping the beam modulation frequency constant. The thermal
waves decay to 37% (1/e) of their original amplitude over a distance \( L \), which is called the thermal diffusion depth or the thermal wave decay length, given by the following equation:

\[
L = \left( \frac{D}{\pi f} \right)^{1/2}
\]

where \( D \) and \( f \) refer to the sample’s thermal diffusivity and the infrared beam phase modulation frequency, respectively (59).

![Schematic diagram of PA-FTIR instrument.](image)

PA-FTIR technique has already been utilized to study heterogeneous polymer (60, 61) and polymer clay nanocomposites (62, 63), seashells (54, 64), and enamel of an intact human tooth (65, 66). Thermal damages by lasers on the tibia of rabbits was investigated by Linear scan (LS-PA-FTIR) spectroscopy (67). Heated deer antler (group I) and whale tympanic bulla were also investigated by LS-PA-FTIR spectroscopy recently (68).

In the present study, PA-FTIR has been utilized to study undisturbed human cortical bone from both transverse and longitudinal planes. We have also conducted depth profiling experiments, utilizing SS-PA-FTIR to study human bone at several penetration depths.
2.2. Materials and Methodology

2.2.1. Materials

The human femur was obtained from National Disease Research Interchange, PA (from 27 years old, female donor with no apparent metabolic bone disease record) and was stored in a freezer at -70°C. The femur was cut into small pieces with a saw and cleaned thoroughly using deionized water at room temperature in a very short time. A diamond-wafering blade (Buehler, Isomet, Lake Bluff, IL) was used to cut the pieces into smaller samples (~8mm, 6mm, 1mm) in both longitudinal and transverse planes to get longitudinal section and transverse section correspondingly for FTIR experiments. Another set of samples with the same preparation methods as above were further cut into three sections for additional FTIR experiments (Figure 2.2).

Figure 2.2. (a) Location of the tested sample from the human femur; and (b) Schematic representation of bone showing from where the sample were cut, 1 represents inner side, 2 middle, and 3 outer side of the bone piece.
For SEM imaging, the samples in both longitudinal and transverse planes were further fixed in 2.5% Glutaradehyde (Tousimis) overnight. Further, the resulting specimens were rinsed twice with sodium phosphate buffer (0.1M PH 7.35, Tousimis), followed by post-fixation in 1% Osmium-tetroxide (Electron Microscopy Sciences) for 2 h. The samples were then rinsed twice again as before, followed by dehydration through a graded series of ethanol (30%, 50%, 70%, 90%, 100%, 100%, 100%, from Aaper Alcohol and Chemical Co.). After being critical point-dried in liquid CO₂ (Autosamdr-810, Tousimis) and fractured in liquid nitrogen, the specimens were coated with carbon (Carbon coater: Cressington 208 carbon) and examined using a Field Emission Scanning Electron Microscope (JEOL JSM-7600F).

2.2.2. Methods

FTIR spectra were collected using Thermo Electron, Nexus 870 spectrometer equipped with MTEC Model 300 photoacoustic accessory. Before each data collection, the PA chamber was purged with dry helium for 15 min. All spectra were collected in the range of 4000-400 cm⁻¹, at a spectral resolution of 4 cm⁻¹ and SS-PA experiments were done at frequencies ranging from 50Hz to 1000Hz. GRAMS/32 software was used for spectra analysis. The center positions for each sub-band in curve-fitting were determined by second-derivative analysis and the shapes of the underlying bands were chosen by Gaussian algorithm.

2.3. Results

2.3.1. Microstructures of human bone in transverse and longitudinal planes

The human bone exhibits a hierarchical structure with the osteon as an important structural element. Figure 2.3 shows microstructure of bone sample in transverse and longitudinal planes. Figure 2.3a shows an osteon with a haversian canal at the center which is
surrounded by concentric lamellae of collagen fibers. Lamellae are made up of fiber bundles with normally plywood-like array pattern (69). The fiber bundles are further composed of mineralized fibrils which consist of nanoscale collagen and minerals. In mineralized fibrils, collagen and mineral have a staggered arrangement with periodicity of 67nm, as shown in Figure 2.3d. Bone collagen is assembled in an orderly manner with hole-zones of neighboring molecules being adjacent to one another to form channels or grooves in the packed assemblage (schematically shown in Figure 2.4a and b). Platelet-shaped hydroxyapatite (HAP) crystals are positioned in channels or grooves and crystal sizes may exceed the dimensions of hole-zones (4, 9, 70).

Figure 2.3. SEM micrographs of human bone (a and b) Transverse section; and (c and d) Longitudinal section.
Collagen and mineral have preferential orientations. In the transverse plane, round osteons can be seen on the section, and the mineralized fibrils are protruding out of lamellae as shown in Figure 2.3b. In the longitudinal plane, the fibrils are aligned parallel or at an angles to the long axis, as shown in Figure 2.3c, and the mineral crystals are roughly along the long axis of the bone (16). Figure 2.4c shows a model of the mineral structure in the (001) plane and the (100) plane. Details of model construction are reported elsewhere (71). As seen from the model for (100) plane (from Figure 2.4c), each of the two OH ions is surrounded by a Ca triangle, and the OH ions are relatively isolated from the other structural units such as PO₄ tetrahedral and CaO₆ octahedra.

Figure 2.4. HAP in bone. (a) Staggered arrangement if mineralized fibrils. (b) Relationship between collagen molecules and intra-fibrillar HAP crystal. (c) HAP structure projected on the (001) plane and (100) plane (adapted from (71)).
2.3.2. **Comparison of PA-FTIR and TS-FTIR spectra**

A typical PA-FTIR spectrum (linear-scan) from bone sample is shown in Figure 2.5. On comparing the PA spectra to TS-FTIR spectra such as that obtained from rat tibia (obtained from powder in a KBr pellet) in the range of 4000-400 cm\(^{-1}\) (24) or healthy human cortical bone in the range of 1800-800 cm\(^{-1}\) (26), band positions appear similar, but some band-shapes such as the phosphate \(\nu_3\) band and the carbonate \(\nu_2\) band are observed to be different. Further, the intensity of the phosphate \(\nu_3\) band in transmission mode is the strongest while in PA mode it is much weaker; For PA-FTIR spectra, the OH band at 2262-3732 cm\(^{-1}\) is the strongest.

![Figure 2.5. LS-PA-FTIR spectra of human bone in the 4000-400 cm\(^{-1}\) region, velocity of mirror: 0.158 cm/s: (a) Transverse; and (b) Longitudinal sections.](image)

TS-FTIR experiments evaluate the bulk sample, whereas PA-FTIR measures the near-surface (~35\(\mu\)m) molecular structures. In addition, magnitude of the PA-FTIR signal is proportional to absorptivity, concentration or sampling depth (59). All of these factors influence the intensity of bands. In PA mode, the detector is replaced by a photoacoustic sample cell which
has a KBr window for transmitting mid-infrared radiation and a microphone for photoacoustic signal detection. The carbonate ν2 vibration shows a sharp band which indicates that PA-FTIR is more sensitive to carbonate ν2. In a previous work, PA-FTIR appears more sensitive than TS-FTIR in observing some cross-linking reactions (72). The appearance of amide III as a distinct band as seen in Figure 2.5 also indicates that PA-FTIR is more sensitive to this band.

Additionally, ν1 PO₄³⁻ vibration at 960cm⁻¹ and ν4 PO₄³⁻ at ~476cm⁻¹ are also distinctly observed in the PA-FTIR spectrum while being very weak in transmission mode (26). Phosphate exhibits four fundamental modes of vibrations: ν1 the symmetric stretching at ~962cm⁻¹, ν2 symmetric bending at ~470, ν3 antisymmetric stretching at 900-1200cm⁻¹, and ν4 antisymmetric bending at 564~603cm⁻¹. Only the triply degenerate vibration species of the tetrahedral molecules are infrared active, so only ν3 and ν4 should be observed in the FTIR spectra. However, when the geometrical parameters shift to lower molecular symmetry, ν1 and ν2 become observable(43). As observed in the data, in the transmission mode, these two bands are very weak, but very prominent in the photoacoustic mode. Therefore, it appears that phosphate ion geometry is less symmetric in its undisturbed state as detected by the PA-FTIR, with all phosphate vibrations detected.

2.3.3. Comparison of PA spectra from transverse and longitudinal sections

Figure 2.5 shows LS-PA-FTIR spectra for solid bone samples from the transverse and the longitudinal sections in the energy range of 4000-400cm⁻¹. The spectra were normalized with the O-H peak (3322cm⁻¹). The assignments of the bands are given in Table 2.1. The spectral analyses from these data were performed in three spectral ranges corresponding to 3700-2500, 2000-1180, and 1180-450cm⁻¹.
Table 2.1. Band assignments of PA-FTIR spectra from human bone.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Wavenumber (cm⁻¹)</th>
<th>Wavenumber (cm⁻¹)</th>
<th>Band assignment</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>transverse</td>
<td>longitudinal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3564</td>
<td>3570</td>
<td>Structural OH</td>
<td>(73)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3322</td>
<td>3328</td>
<td>OH stretching vibration from embedded water</td>
<td>(43)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2959</td>
<td>2961</td>
<td>CH₃ asymmetric stretch: mainly lipids</td>
<td>(24)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2926</td>
<td>2926</td>
<td>CH₂ asymmetric stretch: mainly lipids, with the little contribution from proteins, carbohydrates, nucleic acids</td>
<td>(24)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2884</td>
<td>2885</td>
<td>CH₃ symmetric stretch: mainly proteins, with the little contribution from lipids, carbohydrates, nucleic acids</td>
<td>(24)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2855</td>
<td>2853</td>
<td>CH₂ symmetric stretch: mainly lipids, with the little contribution from proteins, carbohydrates, nucleic acids</td>
<td>(24)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1747</td>
<td></td>
<td>C=O stretch: lipids, cholesterol esters, triglycerides</td>
<td>(74)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1652</td>
<td>1654</td>
<td>Amide 1 (protein C=O stretch)</td>
<td>(74)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1549-1505</td>
<td>1546-1506</td>
<td>Amide 2 (Protein N-H bend, C-N stretch)</td>
<td>(74)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1449,1415</td>
<td>1447,1415</td>
<td>carbonyl and carbonate v₃ vibration</td>
<td>(24)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1342</td>
<td>1340</td>
<td>CH₂ wagging</td>
<td>(43)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1236</td>
<td>1236</td>
<td>Amide 3(C-N stretch, N-H bend, C-C stretch)</td>
<td>(43)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1180-1000</td>
<td>1180-1100</td>
<td>ν₃PO₄³⁻</td>
<td>(43)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>962</td>
<td>963</td>
<td>ν₁PO₄³⁻</td>
<td>(43)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>874</td>
<td>875</td>
<td>ν₂CO₃²⁻</td>
<td>(43)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>609,576</td>
<td>606,567</td>
<td>ν₄PO₄⁴⁺</td>
<td>(43)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>476</td>
<td>470</td>
<td>ν₂PO₄³⁻</td>
<td>(43)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As seen in Figure 2.6a in the energy range of 4000-2000 cm⁻¹, a broad band in the region around 3322 cm⁻¹ is observed, that is attributed to the O-H stretching vibration from water.
combined with N-H stretching (amide A) (43). This indicates that there is a large amount of water present in both bone samples. Figure 2.6b shows the second-derivative spectral curves for this region. The bands at 3564 cm\(^{-1}\) and 3570 cm\(^{-1}\) are assigned to the stretching vibration of the structural hydroxyl group from hydroxyapatite (73). Although the presence of hydroxyl ions in the bone mineral has been debated (52, 53), from the appearance of a shoulder to the broad O-H band and the resulting features in second-derivative (Figure 2.6b), we believe that there are a small amount of structural OH ions in the bone mineral. The band at around 3074 cm\(^{-1}\) is attributed to amide B which is Fermi resonance band of the first overtone of the amide II band powered by the N-H stretching vibration (75). The O-H bending band from water is overlapped by amide I. The band around 2100 cm\(^{-1}\) is assigned to OH stretching vibrations from P-OH. These bands lie in 2100 cm\(^{-1}\) region and have been previously observed in hydroxyapatite spectra (76-78). They were attributed to \(\text{PO}_4^{3-}\) (76) and P-OH vibrational modes (79). In the present spectra, the shapes of these bands are more like those obtained from hydroxyapatite.

(a) ![PA-FTIR spectra](image)

(b) ![Inverted second-derivative curves](image)

Figure 2.6. (a) PA-FTIR spectra of human bone (transverse and longitudinal) in the 4000-2000 cm\(^{-1}\) region; and (b) Inverted second-derivative curves in the energy range of 3900-2400 cm\(^{-1}\).
In the second-derivative curves, the sharp C-H stretching bands from organic matrix are smoothed out. It is observed in the spectra that CH₃, and CH₂ asymmetric and symmetric stretching vibrations are present at 2960, 2926, 2884 and 2854cm⁻¹ in both sample sections (see Table 2.1). The CH₂ asymmetric band (~2926cm⁻¹) arises primarily from lipids, with the little contribution from proteins, carbohydrates, and nucleic acids in the longitudinal section, this band is observed to be comparatively stronger than that in the transverse section. This may result from structure difference between longitudinal and transverse sections. In the longitudinal section, the cross-section of arteries is probed as compared to only cross-section of osteons observed in the transverse section.

The energy range of 2000-1180cm⁻¹ (Figure 2.7) is attributed primarily to the organic matrix of bone. The band at around 1654cm⁻¹ arises from amide I, which corresponds to C=O stretching of protein. In the longitudinal section, the band at 1747cm⁻¹ is attributed to C=O stretching of lipids, cholesterol esters, and triglycerides from the arteries (74). The bands in the range of 1555-1500cm⁻¹ are attributed to amide II, which corresponds to the N-H bending and C-N stretching of protein. The bands at around 1454, 1413 cm⁻¹ are attributed to CH₃ and carbonate ν3 asymmetric stretching (80). The band at 1236 cm⁻¹ is attributed to amide III. No significant differences are observed between the two sections of these bands, which indicate that these bands are not orientation dependent. Kazanci et al. found that ν1 PO₄³⁻ and amide I vibrations are sensitive to the orientation and the polarization direction of the incident light in Raman spectra (22). However, because of overlapping O-H bending vibration, amide I in PA-FTIR spectra does not show orientation dependence.
Figure 2.7. Photoacoustic infrared spectra of human bone (transverse and longitudinal) in the energy range of 2000-1180 cm\(^{-1}\).

In the energy range of 1180-400 cm\(^{-1}\), as seen in Figure 2.8, spectra intensity rises primarily from mineral vibrations. The broad and strong absorption band in the region 1180-900 cm\(^{-1}\) is typically assigned to \(\nu_1\) and \(\nu_3\) PO\(_{4}^{3-}\), and the band at 609-576 cm\(^{-1}\) is assigned to \(\nu_4\) PO\(_{4}^{3-}\) vibrations. The band at 874 cm\(^{-1}\) is assigned to \(\nu_2\) out-of-plane bending of CO\(_3^{2-}\). In the energy range of 1180-900 cm\(^{-1}\), there is a small amount of contribution from collagen around 1030 cm\(^{-1}\) and 1080 cm\(^{-1}\) (81). In Paschalis’s and Magne’s studies, a subtraction procedure was developed using spectra from decalcified bone to remove those contributions (27, 82). However, those contributions are very small, and the decalcification procedure also includes some change to the organic matrix structure, and therefore, in recent papers, the subtraction step is not performed (41, 83). It is widely accepted that PO\(_{4}^{3-}\) vibrations have orientation dependence (22, 84). In Raman spectra, the band at 1059 cm\(^{-1}\) displayed a strong intensity dependence on the scattering configuration of the parallel polarization. In the regions of \(\nu_4\) and \(\nu_2\) PO\(_{4}^{3-}\) modes,
bands showing orientation dependent intensity are observed (84). In the present study, we also see the orientation-dependent changes of ν3 and ν2 PO₄³⁻, but ν1 and ν4 vibration modes exhibit little change in the different planes.

![Photoacoustic spectra of bone](image)

**Figure 2.8.** Photoacoustic infrared spectra of human bone (transverse and longitudinal) in the energy range of 1180-400 cm⁻¹.

The inverted second-derivative curve in the energy range of 1180-927 cm⁻¹ is shown in Figure 2.9a, exhibiting a broad band from mineral. This broad mineral band arises from 12 sub-bands (Table 2.2). These ν1, ν3 PO₄³⁻ sub-bands were previously observed using X-ray and FTIR studies (27, 85, 86). Curve-fitting in this region is shown in Figure 2.9b and c after normalization. The ratio of the 1023/1038 cm⁻¹ bands (often used to describe stoichiometry) (35) in the transverse section is 0.51, while in the longitudinal section it is 0.29. Further, at around 1090 cm⁻¹ the sub-band area in the longitudinal section is larger than that in the transverse section. Therefore, bone appears to be more stoichiometric in longitudinal section surface.
Table 2.2. Major components of the ν1, ν3 PO$_4^{3-}$ bands in bone (27, 87, 88).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Position Transverse</th>
<th>Area Transverse</th>
<th>Position Longitudinal</th>
<th>Area Longitudinal</th>
<th>Band assignment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1150</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>1140</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>HPO$_4^{2-}$ containing apatites</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1122</td>
<td>211</td>
<td>1121</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>ν3 PO$_4^{3-}$ in Poorly crystalline apatites</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1110</td>
<td>125</td>
<td>1105</td>
<td>217</td>
<td>ν3 PO$_4^{3-}$ in Poorly crystalline apatites</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1091</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>1086</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>ν3 PO$_4^{3-}$ in stoichiometric HA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1077</td>
<td>0.16</td>
<td>1071</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>ν3 PO$_4^{3-}$ in Poorly crystalline apatites</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1067</td>
<td>262</td>
<td>1059</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>ν3 PO$_4^{3-}$ in Poorly crystalline apatites</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1050</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>1047</td>
<td>139</td>
<td>HPO$_4^{2-}$ containing apatites and type B carbonate-containing apatites</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1038</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>1038</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>PO$_4^{5-}$ in stoichiometric HA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1023</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>1023</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>Nonstoichiometric apatites containing HPO$_4^{2-}$ and/or CO$_3^{2-}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1007</td>
<td>163</td>
<td>1010</td>
<td>144</td>
<td>ν3 PO$_4^{3-}$ in apatitic environment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>993</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>988</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>ν3 PO$_4^{3-}$ in apatitic environment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>959</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>959</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>ν1 PO$_4^{4+}$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Figure 2.9. (a) Inverted second-derivative curves in the energy range of 1180–927 cm⁻¹; curve fitting analysis of the v1, v3 phosphate band (1180–927 cm⁻¹) of (b) Transverse section, and (c) Longitudinal section.
2.3.4. **Comparison of three smaller sections in the transverse and longitudinal planes**

Further, similar positioned bone pieces are cut into three smaller sections in both transverse and longitudinal planes respectively (Figure 2.2b), and the spectra collected are shown in Figure 2.10. It is to be noted that the outer section includes periosteum and the inner section includes endosteum in the vicinity of the medullary cavity.

From the spectrum of the transverse sections, it is clearly seen that when closer to the inner side, the shoulder around 3550 cm$^{-1}$ appears stronger indicating that more structural O-H appears towards the medullary cavity. However, this band does not show any obvious change in the longitudinal sections. Both two planes exhibit similar characteristics, when approaching the inner side, C-H stretching bands arising from lipids, proteins etc. appear stronger, the C=O stretching band at 1747 cm$^{-1}$ appears sharper on the inner side of both planes. Nevertheless, the
C=O stretching band shows small peaks on the outer and middle sides of the longitudinal sections, while being significantly reduced on these sides of the transverse sections. It is known that the major intra-cortical arteries (mainly Haversian canal and Volkman’s canal) carry the longitudinal blood supply (89). On the longitudinal section surface, some canals are crosscut so that the materials from arteries appear on the surface which make this C=O stretching band more intense in the longitudinal section rather than in the transverse section. Moreover, a great number of arterioles in the endosteal membrane were seen so that the inner sides along both planes also exhibit this sharp band. This phenomenon can also be confirmed by the stronger signs of C-H band at around 2900 cm$^{-1}$ in the corresponding spectra. In addition, v3 PO$_4^{3-}$ broad band profile is varying in these sections.
Figure 2.10. PA-LS-FTIR spectra of human bone in the 4000-400 cm\(^{-1}\) region, velocity of mirror: 0.158 cm/s. (a) Transverse section, 4000-400 cm\(^{-1}\) region; (b) Longitudinal section, 4000-400 cm\(^{-1}\) region.

2.3.5. Depth profiling

For cortical bone, thermal diffusivity \(D\) equals \(5.5 \times 10^{-3}\) cm\(^2\)/s in the transverse section and \(4.4 \times 10^{-3}\) cm\(^2\)/s in the longitudinal section (90). \(L\) is calculated using Eq. (2.2). In our experiments, we used the frequencies of 50, 100, 200, 500, and 1000Hz, resulting in values of \(L\)
to be 59.2, 41.8, 29.6, 18.7, 13.2μm in the transverse section and 52.9, 37.4, 26.5, 16.7, 11.8μm respectively in the longitudinal section (Table 2.3).

Table 2.3. Thermal diffusion depths of bone varying with Phase Modulation (PM) frequencies.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PM frequency(Hz)</th>
<th>50</th>
<th>100</th>
<th>200</th>
<th>500</th>
<th>1000</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>L\textsubscript{transverse}(μm)</td>
<td>59.2</td>
<td>41.8</td>
<td>29.6</td>
<td>18.7</td>
<td>13.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L\textsubscript{longitudinal}(μm)</td>
<td>52.9</td>
<td>37.4</td>
<td>26.5</td>
<td>16.7</td>
<td>11.8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 2.11a and Figure 2.11b show the SS-PA-FTIR spectra obtained at the five penetration depths in the transverse and longitudinal sections in the energy range of 4000-830 cm\(^{-1}\). The spectra were normalized with the O-H peak (3323 cm\(^{-1}\)). In both sections, the O-H broad band (3732-2262 cm\(^{-1}\)) appears sharper and the intensity of this band appears lower as compared to the matrix band or mineral band. This is primarily due to the loss of water during cutting of bone. Interestingly it is found that the structural O-H shoulder appears increasingly reduced on approaching the surface of the sample. The bands at 2926 cm\(^{-1}\) (stretching from lipids) in Figure 2.11a appear stronger at 200hz and 500hz compared to other frequencies which indicates that through different penetration depths, the component of lipids may vary due to the plywood-like array pattern of lamellae. Comparing the different penetration depths, it is apparent that when closer to the surface, the variation becomes stronger.

Figure 2.11c and d shows the SS-PA-FTIR spectra in the energy range of 2000-830 cm\(^{-1}\). In both sections, the broad amide I band appears sharper as the thermal diffusion depth \(L\) decreases. Amide II and amide III appear similar at different penetration depths. Usually bands in the amide III region are more resolved in the original protein spectrum than they are in the amide I spectrum. This results from reduced OH vibrations in the amide III region due to reduced water interfering with spectrum as compared to amide I region (91). Hence, the variation
of amide I also reflects the loss of water when approaching the surface. Thus significant change of the organic matrix in the spectra is not observed.

The most significant variation at different depths arises from the mineral bands including \( \text{CO}_3^{2-} \) stretching and \( \text{PO}_4^{3-} \) bands. The intensity of \( \nu_3 \text{PO}_4^{3-} \) band appears stronger and sharper close to the surface which probably can result from loss of water near surface. Water forms hydrogen bonds between water and collagen, and also water and mineral, which broaden the \( \nu_3 \) phosphate and amide I bands. Additionally, it is interesting to note that all of the changes are gradual, but from 500Hz to 1000 Hz the change is particularly abrupt. This may imply that the material system is significantly altered around 12\( \mu \)m because of the surface structure distortion and the loss of surface water.

![Figure 2.11. SS-PA-FTIR spectra of human bone: (a) Transverse section (4000-830 cm\(^{-1}\)); (b) Longitudinal section (4000-830 cm\(^{-1}\)); (c) Transverse section (2000-830 cm\(^{-1}\)); and (d) Longitudinal section (2000-830 cm\(^{-1}\)).](image)
Figure 2.11. SS-PA-FTIR spectra of human bone (continued): (a) Transverse section (4000-830 cm\(^{-1}\)); (b) Longitudinal section (4000-830 cm\(^{-1}\)); (c) Transverse section (2000-830 cm\(^{-1}\)); and (d) Longitudinal section (2000-830 cm\(^{-1}\)).
2.3.6. Discussion

PA-FTIR is shown to be a useful technique for investigation of bone since it enables samples to be tested as-received and also the coupling gas helium (He) protects the material from bacterial growth. Comparison of the FTIR spectra obtained using transmission and photoacoustic modes, indicated differences: (1) Sample in photoacoustic mode indicates a broad O-H band due to presence of water in the as-received PA sample. In addition, the OH band and the band from organic matrix band at around 1500 cm\(^{-1}\) are both stronger than those in the transmission mode. (2) Changes to \(\nu_3\) phosphate band: in PA-FTIR, the band shows higher intensity at higher energy side while in TS-FTIR the reverse is observed. We found that the \(\nu_3\) phosphate band not only depends on the orientation of bone sample, but also depends on the position of the sample. However, overall the composition is the most crucial factor. By inspecting the spectrum obtained by PA-FTIR from our group’s study on synthetic HAP (92), we saw that the shape of \(\nu_3\) phosphate band of synthetic HAP was quite similar to that of healthy human cortical bone obtained by transmission mode which underwent a series of treatments (26). Therefore, we believe that the difference between the shapes of \(\nu_3\) \(\text{PO}_4^{3-}\) band from both modes is primarily due to the sample condition. Further, the undisturbed healthy cortical human sample exhibits nonstoichiometric HAP based on the study of PA-FTIR spectra. (3) Both amide III and \(\nu_2\) \(\text{CO}_3^{2-}\) bands are more prominent in PA-FTIR than those in TS-FTIR (26). Amide III region from FTIR is quite promising for studying protein secondary structure because it has more resolved differences and has no water interference (93). However, this region was not sufficiently investigated due to low signal in TS-FTIR. The \(\nu_2\) \(\text{CO}_3^{2-}\) bands could be related to Ca/P ratio and mineral structure (94).
The presence of hydroxyl groups in bone mineral crystals has been long debated. The absence of the OH infrared spectral band in bone was first reported by Biltz and Pellegrino (47) and was later confirmed by extensive studies of undisturbed and deproteinated isolated crystals of bone (48-52). Furthermore, free and unbounded OH appeared after the bone was heated to above 600˚C which was explained by the decomposition of carbonate ions with the presence of water to form O-H apatite (47). Blumenthal and Posner attributed the failure to detect OH group in IR spectrum to distortions in the lattice of the bone crystals and hydrogen bonding with water especially that on the surfaces of the crystals (48). We know that, the formation of hydrogen bonds usually leads to lowering of the frequency of vibration, broadening of the O-H stretching vibrations, as well as skewing of the band profile. Rey et al. (50) utilized FTIR, magic angle spinning and proton nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy to confirm that there was no detectable O-H in bone mineral. And they also found that the decomposition of carbonate ions were eliminated by CO₂ environment at elevated temperature which confirmed the conclusion of Biltz and Pellegrino (47). Inelastic neutron-scattering study (51) showed the absence of structural OH group but only very small amount of OH ions belonging to HPO₄⁻ like species. Raman spectra also showed that there was no OH ions in bone mineral while they exist in dentin and enamel to some degree (52). However, almost all of the above studies have done chemical pretreatments on bone to make it anorganic and the pretreatments may eliminate interference from the organic matrix to the mineral. A two-dimensional solid-state nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) spectroscopy technique that detects the proton spectrum of bone crystals while suppressing the interfering matrix signals was utilized to eliminate the need for specimen pretreatment other than cryogenic grinding show that the bone crystal OH⁻ is readily detectable (53). The OH⁻ content of human cortical bone is roughly 20% of the amount expected in
stoichiometric hydroxyapatite (53). Later C. Rey concluded that “the biological bone apatites contain only a very small percentage of the total number of hydroxyl groups present stoichiometric hydroxyapatites” (95). However, due to the lack of accurate chemical analytic techniques and the presence of numerous trace elements and a hydrated surface layer, it is still very difficult to correctly describe the chemical composition of bone apatites such as the amounts of HPO$_4^{2-}$ and OH$^-$ ions (95).

Based on the PA-FTIR spectra, from the shoulder of the broad OH band and second-derivative of undisturbed bone spectra in both longitudinal and transverse sections, we believe that there is a small amount of structural OH ions existing in bone mineral. By inspecting the PO$_4^{3-}$ broad band of three small sections, it is observed that in the transverse section structural OH is more prominent in the inner side of bone sample. This phenomenon is consistent with results from Paschalis et al. (28) which indicate that the mineral lying in the vicinity of the medullary cavity is more crystalline/mature, and has more hydroxyapatite-like stoichiometry. Therefore in the vicinity of the medullary cavity there is more structural OH, and more stoichiometric phosphate.

In collagen molecules, C=O bonds are perpendicular to the backbone of the collagen molecule and the mineral c-axis, so amide I has preferential orientation. In polarized Raman experiments, amide I stretching vibration is the strongest when the beam is perpendicular to c-axis (22, 96). However, in our PA-FTIR experiments, orientation effect of amide I band is not observed since the band is severely overlapped by O-H bending vibration.

In our present study, it is interesting to note a band at 1747 cm$^{-1}$ is observed which is quite prominent in the vicinity of the medullary cavity in the both sections. In previous studies, this band was absent in most cases after subtraction by Poly(methyl methacrylate) (PMMA) (26,
34, 97, 98) or glycolmethacrylate (GMA) in which the tissue was fixed (99). The C=O band from PMMA or GMA is centered at around 1730 cm\(^{-1}\), and is strong and broad and may overlap the weak C=O band from bone. In the current experiments, no pretreatment of bone is performed hence this band cannot be attributed to PMMA or GMA. In some other studies, the presence of carbonates at the channel sites in the structure may also generate a small band at 1745 cm\(^{-1}\) (44, 84). In the apatite structure, the channel site is defined by triads of Ca ions. The Ca ions are bonded not only to oxygen (of the phosphate groups), but also to hydroxyls that make them distinguishable (52). However, in the vicinity of the medullary cavity, the 1747 cm\(^{-1}\) band appears very intense and may have contributions from sources other than Ca ions. According to the literature, the total lipid content of bone is less than 3% (100), but content is high in arteries (74) or other tissues (101). After comparison of the spectra in different planes and different sites, we infer that this band can be attributed to the C=O stretching of lipids, cholesterol esters, triglycerides (74) from the arteries.

In polarized Raman experiments, \(\nu_1\) PO\(_4^{3-}\) stretching vibration is the strongest parallel to the axis of the fiber (22, 102) and exhibits orientation effect. But in infrared spectrum, only those modes accompanying dipole moment changes during vibration are active, hence \(\nu_3\) PO\(_4^{3-}\) stretching vibration has the strongest signal. This broad band shows different sub-bands according to orientations and sites of bone. Although compositionally and structurally similar to synthetic calcium hydroxyapatite \(\text{Ca}_{10}(\text{OH})_2(\text{PO}_4)_6\), human bone mineral is composed of a poorly crystallized apatite which is calcium (Ca)-deficient and contains hydrogen phosphate (HPO\(_4^{2-}\)), carbonate (CO\(_3^{2-}\)), and other ions. The hydroxyapatite crystal in bone has a hexagonal structure with space group \(\text{P6}_3/m\); however, many vacancies and substitutes exist in the structure that cause distortions. Considerations of site group symmetry and factor group symmetry would
result in six phosphate bands to be active in the v3 domain of stoichiometric hydroxyapatite (103). Additionally, due to the vacancies and substitutes, C. Rey found more sub-bands based on the deconvoluted spectra in this domain (88). Boskey’s group (27, 28, 86) assigned 11 or 12 peaks in the v1v3 domain based on second-derivative of the spectra. Their work also presented a “crystallinity/maturity index” as the ratio of 1020/1030 cm\(^{-1}\) and the more crystalline/mature, the more hydroxyapatite-like stoichiometry, the bigger the crystalline size, the less the ion substitution by ions such as CO\(_3\)\(^{2-}\) (28, 88). Magne et al. followed these assignments (based on Fourier Self-Deconvolution treatment of spectra) in studying dentin and confirmed that the two sub-bands at around 1030 cm\(^{-1}\) and 1090 cm\(^{-1}\) can be attributed to v3 PO\(_4\)\(^{3-}\) in stoichiometric apatites whereas other sub-bands were all from v3PO\(_4\)\(^{3-}\) in poor crystalline or from HPO\(_4\)\(^{2-}\), except v1PO\(_4\)\(^{3-}\) (82, 87). Magne et al. also agreed that when the apatite gets increasingly mature, probably through the loss of HPO\(_4\)\(^{2-}\) and vacancies, the stoichiometric apatite would tend to increase. But the evolution of carbonate ions is controversial in these studies. Farlay et al. questioned the denotation of “crystallinity/ maturity index” and suggested that it should be only “maturity index” because an increase in 1030/1020 ratio is not necessarily related to an increase of crystal size in human bone (25). Additionally, Farlay et al. suggested using 1030/1100 cm\(^{-1}\) ratio instead as the “maturity index” and the trend of which is in accordance with that of 1030/1020 cm\(^{-1}\) ratio by peak curve-fitting.

The data presented here thus indicates that based on the ratio of 1023/1038 cm\(^{-1}\) bands, human bone shows more stoichiometric characteristics in the longitudinal surface. As shown in Figure 2.3a, intrafibrillar mineral is positioned in the hole-zone and the shape of the mineral is regulated by the collagen around it. The surface of the longitudinal section being launched by incident infrared beam contains the interface between the mineral and the three chains of
collagen, while the surface of the transverse section contains mainly the interface between the mineral and the collagen telopeptide. On the mineral surface, there is a hydrated layer containing loosely bound ions which are easily exchangeable with charged groups of proteins present in collagen and non-collagenous protein. The collagen molecules are mainly composed of uncharged amino acids including glycine, proline, alanine, hydroxyproline, etc. which account for about 68% of the total collagen composition (104). The charged amino acids such as glutamic and aspartic acid, lysine, arginine, hydroxylysine and histidine may form ion bindings with mineral ions (105). On the other hand, collagen molecules have a partial positive charge at the N-telopeptide and a partial negative charge at the C-telopeptide. An interface formed from the interactions of these telopeptides and HAP has been found to significantly influence the load-deformation behavior of collagen (8, 10). Additionally, it was found that the positive net charge close to the C-telopeptide of the collagen molecules is the most favorable for interaction with negative charges and promotes the infiltration of the fibrils with amorphous calcium phosphate to induce mineral nucleation and organization (106). Therefore, we suggest that the strong interaction between exchangeable ions-contained-mineral surface and the charged collagen telopeptides leads to higher non-stoichiometry in the transverse surface rather than in the longitudinal surface.

Hence in our opinion, by scrutinizing the assignments of the ν1ν3 PO₄³⁻ contour suggested by Paschalis and Magne (27, 28, 82, 87), the positions of the bands have some differences because for different samples the mineral structures may vary to a certain degree. Therefore based on second-derivative treatment of the raw spectra, we come up with 12 sub-bands by peak curve-fitting. The ratio of 1023/1038cm⁻¹ bands in the longitudinal section is much larger than that in the transverse section. At around 1090 cm⁻¹ the sub-band area in the
longitudinal section is larger than that in the transverse section. Therefore, the bone in the longitudinal section appears more stoichiometric.

2.4. Conclusion

In the present study, PA-FTIR experiments were performed on undisturbed human cortical bone. Specifically, the directionality of molecular interactions is probed by testing the samples in longitudinal and transverse modes. The spectra obtained demonstrate that this technique has similar results as compared to traditionally used transmission mode, and it is more sensitive to amide amide III and ν2 carbonate bands. PA-FTIR spectra of bone shows a C=O band at 1747 cm\(^{-1}\) in undisturbed human bone that can result from C=O stretching of lipids, cholesterol esters, and triglycerides from the arteries. The comparison of the spectra in the transverse and longitudinal sections indicates that the mineral in the longitudinal surface is more stoichiometric. This may result from reduced interaction between exchangeable ions contained within mineral surface and collagen molecules than that between mineral surface and collagen termini on the transverse surface. In the vicinity of the medullary cavity, bone also has more organic matrix, and the mineral is more stoichiometric as compared to that in the middle or near periosteum. The depth profiling results of PA-FTIR demonstrate that the presence of hydroxyl group in FTIR may relate to the water content of bone, and the organic matrix and mineral structure are both affected by surface cutting. These studies describe the spectroscopic evidence of role of mineral protein interactions on mineral structure and stoichiometry.
2.5. Acknowledgements

Instrumentation obtained from National Science Foundation MRI grants is acknowledged for enabling experiments conducted in this work. I would also like to acknowledge assistance in electron microscopy laboratory from Mr. Scott Payne.

2.6. References


80


CHAPTER 3. MICROSTRUCTURAL AND INFRARED SPECTROSCOPIC STUDIES OF HUMAN CORTICAL BONE WITH OSTEODYGENESIS IMPERFECTA

This chapter presents microstructural (SEM images), FTIR spectral, and XRD studies of normal and osteogenesis imperfecta (OI) human cortical bones.

3.1. Introduction

Osteogenesis imperfecta (OI) is an inheritable disease characterized by the fragility of bones and other tissues rich in the type I collagen. About 90% of OI cases result from a causative variant in one of the two structural genes (COL1A1 or COL1A2) for the type I procollagens. OI provides an interesting platform for investigating how alterations of collagen at the molecular level cause changes in the structure of bone. Severity of the disease varies ranging from very mild forms without fractures to intrauterine fractures and perinatal lethality. This disease is associated with all tissues containing type I collagen and also manifests itself to include dentinogenesis imperfecta, blue sclera, hyperlaxicity of ligaments and tendons, hearing impairment and the presence of wormian bones on skull radiographs (1). Usually, the collagen from OI bone has reduced tensile strength; it breaks more easily than normal bone when deformed because fatigue damage accumulates much faster on repetitive loading. It was found that 90% or more of probands with OI have a mutation in one of the two structural genes for type I procollagens (2), with the remaining 10% due to causative recessive variants in the 8 genes known so far, or in other currently unknown genes (3). The two structural genes, COL1A1 and COL1A2, which encode the proα1(I) and proα2(I) chains of type I procollagen, have 1277 (776 in COL1A1, 501 in COL1A2) distinct mutations in the event of osteogenesis imperfecta (R Dalgleish: Osteogenesis Imperfecta Variant Database, http://oi.gene.le.ac.uk, accessed 7 July,
2014) (4). These mutations range in complexity from simple deletions, insertions, and single base substitutions that convert a codon for glycine to a codon for a bulkier amino acid preventing proper folding of the triple helix of collagen. Among the 1277 mutations found, over 85% are substitutions. These mutations may affect the primary structure of a procollagen by preventing the zipper-like folding of the triple helix and causing degradation of normal and abnormal proα chains through procollagen suicide, or producing a kink in the triple helix and causing assembly of abnormally branched or dendritic collagen fibrils (5).

Classically, four types of OI were first described by Sillence et al. in 1979 based on clinical features of the severity of the skeletal phenotype: type I (mild OI with bone fragility and blue sclerae), type II (perinatal lethal), type III (progressive deforming), and type IV (normal sclerae and mild deformity) (6). These four types are entirely designated for mutations in \textit{COL1A1} or \textit{COL1A2}, causing autosomal dominant OI (7, 8). Because of specific clinical/radiological and/or histological features and the discovery of rare recessive genetic causes of OI, this classification was expanded into 11 (7). Among all of the OI phenotypes, OI type I is the mildest form. Patients usually have normal or slightly short stature. They have slender shafts of tubular bones with thin cortex and poorly trabeculated spingiosa as well as vertebral compression fractures (3). In the vast majority of instances, this classic non-deforming OI results from mutations in one \textit{COL1A1} allele (frameshift, nonsense and splice-site alteration) that cause mRNA instability and haploinsufficiency. In a small number of individuals with OI type I, substitutions for glycine were found by small amino acids (cysteine, alanine and serine) near the amino terminal ends of the triple-helical domains of either \textit{COL1A1} or \textit{COL1A2} (9). Recently, Forlino et al. proposed that type I OI should be limited to cases with type I collagen
haploinsufficiency and the occasional individual with a collagen mutation and a very mild phenotype should be designated type IV OI (7).

Many studies have attempted to find a relation between phenotype and genotypes with phenotypic severity (10-13). As a general rule, the phenotypic severity depends on the affected alpha chain, the position of the mutation, the substituting amino acid, or the combination of these three variables. For example, OI severity increases with an amino to carboxyl terminal orientation and substitution by large and charged amino acids (10-12). When the substituting amino acid in the alpha 1 chain is charged or branched and affects a glycine at the amino acid position that is C-terminal of position 200, these substitutions are more likely to have a lethal outcome. No such relationship was found for the alpha 2 chain (14). Researchers have also conducted some related modeling work to investigate this genotype-phenotype relationship. For example, seven types of single point glycine mutations are investigated, and a reduction of the mechanical stiffness of individual tropocollagen molecules is observed (15). It is also shown that the mutations that lead to the most severe OI phenotype correlate with the strongest effects, leading to weakened intermolecular adhesion, increased intermolecular spacing, reduced stiffness, as well as reduced failure strength of collagen fibrils (16). A more recent work demonstrates that the free energy changes as a function of OI point mutations in model collagen molecules which agrees with the trend in the severity of OI from statistical analysis in collagen Type I (17).

In other studies, researchers have conducted various experiments to examine the influences of collagen defects on different constituents of bone, different structural characteristics of bone, and cell activities as well. The findings evaluate the mechanisms of OI
disease. Bone samples are usually from OI patients or OI mouse models. As a direct effect from the mutations in the procollagen, it is found that the amount of collagen from OI bone is less than that from age-matched normal controls (18), collagen aggregation is abnormal (19), stabilizing intermolecular cross-links are reduced (20), and the diameter of type I collagen fibrils in OI bone is larger (21) or smaller (22) as compared with normal bone, and the distribution of D-periodic spacing values was distinctive between WT and Brtl/+ mouse phenotypes (23, 24). As an indirect effect from the mutations in the procollagens, other organic matrix proteins might have an abnormal expression pattern (25-27). Osteonectin is found to be reduced in the bone of all OI patients, with the lowest levels from severely affected type III OI patients (18, 28). The reduction of three proteoglycans (a large chondroitin sulfate proteoglycan, biglycan, and decorin) are also observed from OI bone (18). In another work, an elevated amount of bone sialoprotein and similar decorin level are observed in the bones of OI patients as compared with normal controls (28). Further, higher steady-state levels of fibronectin, thrombospondin, and matrix hyaluronan are observed from bone cells produced by OI patients compared with age-matched controls, exhibiting deficient osteoblastic matrix synthesis (18, 25). Mineral phase from OI models are also found with defects including higher average mineralization density (29-32), smaller, less well aligned, and highly packed mineral crystals with decreased crystallinity (33-37). In addition, higher mineral/matrix ratio and lower carbonate: mineral ratio are usually seen in the mouse model of osteogenesis imperfect (34, 38, 39). Lower Ca/P ratio is also seen in OI human patients (40). There is a contradiction about the heterogeneity of OI bone mineralization in literature: increased heterogeneity in high bone mineralization density (BMD) OI (41) and reduced heterogeneity in OI-I patients (32). Moreover, other structural characteristics are reported with defects due to the procollagen mutations, such as a decrease in the stabilizing enzymatic cross-
links (42), thinner and more disrupted lamellae (1, 43), lower bone mass, and decreased size and amounts of cortical and cancellous bone (32, 44) are seen in OI models. Increased bone turnover is also observed in children and mice with OI (44-46), whereas reduced bone turnover is seen in some OI (type I, and IV) adults and children (47, 48). Immature woven bone is also seen in most clinically, severely affected patients (43). Further, cell activities are influenced by the defective procollagen as an increase in the number of vascular channels (1, 43) and increased osteoclasts and osteocytes are seen in OI bone (49). Meanwhile, deposition of new bone at the single osteoblast level is reduced, and is not compensated by the increased osteoblast cell number (32, 44, 50). Synchrotron radiation-based computed tomography shows that oim bone has more numerous and more branched canals (p<0.001) and more osteocyte lacunae per unit volume compared to WT (p<0.001), although total cortical porosity is comparable between oim and WT bone (51). A similar technique reveals drastically increased cortical porosity, canal diameter, and connectivity of OI bone as compared to pediatric controls (52). The contradictory findings discussed above such as diameter of collagen fibrils, amount of some proteoglycans, and heterogeneity of mineralization are due to large variations of OI phenotypes.

With these findings, the mechanisms of OI disease have been explored. It is suggested that the increased remodeling in OI (increased number of osteoclast and osteocyte) might be due to increased microdamage in the bone matrix (44), and the occurrence of the microdamage might be caused by higher mineralization (53). The higher mineralization density is created by increased nucleation centers in OI bone matrix (32). Therefore, Roschger et al. attributes the OI phenotype to a failure in the osteoblast differentiation pathway and concomitant synthesis of noncollagenous matrix protein which disturbs bone matrix stoichiometry, and this failure causes similar bone mineralization conditions in different OI types (32). In other studies, it is also
suggested that the low ultimate strength observed in oim/oim bone despite its high mineralization content is because the defective quality of mineral present in oim/oim bone might prohibit normal fusion of crystals into an end-to-end fusion of contiguous structure (42). In addition, the structural changes in the mineral also result from abnormal collagen fibril scaffold for mineral deposition (42).

In nature, the most common biominerals are calcium carbonates and calcium phosphates. Their extraordinary ability to accept substitutions and vacancies made the latter occur as a crystalline apatite structure in vertebrates (54). This ability imparts its adaptability to the biological function of different tissues. For example, bone crystals are found to contain significant and varying amounts of $\text{CO}_3^{2-}$ and $\text{HPO}_4^{2-}$ ions. The suggested formula for bone mineral is (55):

$$\text{Ca}_{8.3}(\text{PO}_4)_{4.3}(\text{HPO}_4 \text{ and } \text{CO}_3)_{1.7}(\text{OH} \text{ and/or } 1/2 \text{ CO}_3)_{0.3}$$

In literature, four items have been usually selected as standards to describe the composition and mineral crystal of OI bone: (1) mineral/matrix ratio (calculated from the integrated areas of phosphate (916-1180 cm$^{-1}$) to amide I (1592–1712 cm$^{-1}$)), (2) collagen cross-linking network maturity (XLR, the peak intensity ratio of amide I subbands at 1660 and 1690cm$^{-1}$), (3) carbonate/phosphate ratio (calculated as the integrated area of the ν2 carbonate peak (840–892 cm$^{-1}$) to that of the phosphate), and (4) crystallinity (XST, calculated as the phosphate subband 1030/1020 cm$^{-1}$ peak intensity ratio 1030/1020cm$^{-1}$). These studies on human beings with osteogenesis imperfecta include that: (1) significantly increased mineral/matrix ratio in both cortical and trabecular bone of two high BMD OI patients is observed as compared with normal or classical OI bone (41). In this work, increased collagen maturity in trabecular bone is
also seen and the heterogeneity of both mineral and crystallinity distribution is increased in the two patients relative to both classic OI and the controls (41). (2) FTIR is conducted on different clinical types (I, IB, and IVA) of OI patients; however, there is no conclusion drawn from FTIR spectra (40). FTIR studies of OI mouse models include: (1) Fro/fro and oim/oim genotypes exhibit abnormal collagen crosslinking as determined by FTIR (39); (2) Higher mineral/matrix ratio and lower carbonate/phosphate ratio for oim/oim as compared with normal controls are observed (34, 38, 42, 56); (3) In the oim/oim mouse model, the bisphosphonate treatment results in increased metaphyseal bone mineralization, but does not improve mineral maturity (57). In addition to the four items mentioned above, acid phosphate content HPO$_4^{2-}$ (1128/1096 cm$^{-1}$) has also been utilized to estimate the amount of acid phosphate substitution in the mineral lattice in recent publications and increased acid phosphate contest was noted in Brtl/+teeth (58, 59).

Almost all of these studies focus on these specific bands without considering the wavenumber beyond 2000 cm$^{-1}$ or below 800 cm$^{-1}$. In the present study, we attempt to inspect the FTIR spectra carefully throughout the 4000-400 cm$^{-1}$ range.

In addition, since bone is an orthotropic material, orientational difference in stoichiometry of hydroxyapatite was investigated using FTIR in our previous study (60). This orientational difference was found to be influenced by the interactions between the collagen molecules and mineral. In the present study, the stoichiometry of hydroxyapatite from both transverse and longitudinal planes is also examined using FTIR. XRD and EDS would help to understand the mineral phase of the OI and healthy bone samples in the transverse and longitudinal planes. We found that the OI bone shows similar viscoelastic response as the normal bone in Chapter 5 (61). In this work, the ultrastructure, molecular differences, and mineral
crystal structure as well as Ca/P ratio were studied with the techniques of FE-SEM, FTIR, XRD and EDS.

3.2. Methods and Materials

3.2.1. Materials

Human normal cortical bone (femur, no apparent metabolic bone disease record, 27 years old, female) and OI cortical bone (tibia, no apparent metabolic bone disease record, 22 years old, female with pregnancy experience) were both obtained from National Disease Research Interchange, PA, and were stored in a freezer at -70˚C. The OI type is putative type I, the mildest type, since the person had a height of 67 inches and weight of 180lb. The microstructure and spectroscopic studies of the normal cortical bone have been reported in a published work (60). One 20-mm-thick transverse section was cut from the mid-diaphysis of the cortical bone with a diamond saw. Marrow and flesh were removed by scraping with a ceramic knife and then the bone was washed with deionized (DI) water at room temperature for approximately 10min to avoid deterioration of bone. Then, it was further trimmed down using a low-speed diamond-wafering blade (Buehler, Isomet, Lake Bluff, IL) to obtain specimens with thickness of about 1 mm from both transverse and longitudinal planes (Figure 3.1). These specimens were ready for photoacoustic-FTIR (PA-FTIR) and X-ray diffraction (XRD) characterizations.
3.2.2. Experiments

3.2.2.1. Scanning electron microscopy

Microstructure of the bone specimens was examined using a JEOL JSM-7600F analytical high resolution field-emission scanning electron microscope. Sample preparation for the scanning electron microscope (SEM) imaging involved fixing in 2.5% Glutaraldehyde (Tousimis) overnight followed by rinsing twice with sodium phosphate buffer (0.1M PH 7.35, Tousimis). These samples were further fixed in 1% Osmium-tetroxide (Electron Microscopy Sciences) for 2 hours. Details of the sample preparation for imaging are reported earlier (60).

3.2.2.2. FTIR

FTIR spectra were obtained with a Thermo Electron, Nexus 870 spectrometer which is equipped with MTEC Model 300 photoacoustic (PA) accessory. Before collecting data for each sample, the PA chamber was purged with dry helium for 15 minutes. All spectra were obtained in the range of 4000-400 cm$^{-1}$, with a spectral resolution of 4 cm$^{-1}$. GRAMS/32 software was used for spectra analysis. The center positions for each sub-band in the curve-fitting were
determined by second-derivative analysis. The shapes of the underlying bands were chosen by Gaussian algorithm.

3.2.2.3. XRD method

XRD characterization was performed using X-ray diffractometer (Philips Analytical X’pert MPD, Almelo, Netherlands) with a secondary monochromator and Cu-tube by CuKα radiation wavelength of 1.5406Å. XRD was conducted at a scan rate of 0.05°/s with the scan range of 2θ = 20-60°. Samples for XRD characterization are transverse and longitudinal sections for healthy and OI bone. The widths of the 002 profiles from all the samples were measured to obtain information on the size and/or internal perfection of the crystals along their c-axis. Assuming the changes in crystallinity are due to size rather than strain effects, the crystal size of bone mineral can be obtained by using Scherrer equation, $D = \frac{\lambda}{\beta \cos \theta}$, where $D$ is the mean crystallite size, $\lambda$ is the X-ray wavelength, $\theta$ is the Bragg angle, and $\beta$ is the full width at half maximum (FWHM) of 002 profile expressed in radians (36).

3.3. Results

3.3.1. Microstructure of OI human cortical bone

It has been shown that healthy bone has a comparatively homogenous structure with well attached mineralized fibrils (62). In contrast, the structure of OI bone is quite different. Figure 3.2 (a-j) shows the SEM images of the surfaces of OI bone specimen fractured in liquid N₂. OI bone surface shows loosely bound fibers and particles (Figure 3.2a and b, see arrows), indicating a weaker interaction between the constituents of OI bone than those in healthy bone. Figures 3.2a and 2b also show some osteons with good lamellae shapes; however, some osteons are irregular with big Haversian canal channels (Figure 3.2c and d, see arrows) which can arise from
abnormal remodeling processes. These significant porous structures exacerbate the fragility of OI bone. In addition, OI bone has abnormal collagen fiber areas within crevices (Figure 3.2e and f). No banding pattern was observed on these abnormal collagen fibers using a low angle backscattered electron (LABE) detector. In contrast, a regular banding pattern was detected by the LABE detector on the normal areas of OI bone specimen (Figure 3.2h). However, the periodicity for the OI samples was measured to be about 62.0 nm on average which is smaller than healthy bone periodicity of 67.0 nm. Traub et al. compared the ultrastructure of healthy and different types of OI bones and found that the OI type I bone has a similar texture to healthy cortical bone, which has a relatively homogenous coherent appearance, while type II, III and IV bones have abnormal deposition of mineral regions and loose fibers (62). Our OI bone specimen also shows the abnormal deposition of the mineral region with the size of about 485 µm ×629µm as a separate cluster (Figure 3.2i). The image at higher magnification (Figure 3.2j) reveals that this area is over mineralized with globules of several microns.
Figure 3.2. (a-j) SEM micrographs of OI bone specimens.
3.3.2. Comparison of PA-FTIR Spectra of Normal and OI bones

Infrared microscopy and Fourier transform infrared (FTIR) spectroscopy have been utilized to investigate healthy and diseased bones (63). These spectroscopic techniques can reveal molecular information of materials regarding both composition and conformation. Due to the genetic mutants of procollagen molecules, an abnormal molecular structure of protein in OI is expected. Figure 3.3 depicts PA-FTIR spectra for healthy and OI solid bone samples from the transverse and longitudinal sections in the energy range of 4000–400 cm$^{-1}$. The spectra were normalized with respect to the O–H band (3322 cm$^{-1}$). The assignments of the bands are shown in Table 3.1.

![PA-FTIR spectra](image)

Figure 3.3. PA-FTIR spectra of human OI cortical bone and healthy cortical bone (longitudinal and transverse sections, respectively) in the 4000-400 cm$^{-1}$ region, velocity of mirror: 0.158 cm/s.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Wavenumber (cm(^{-1}))</th>
<th>Band Assignment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Transverse</strong></td>
<td><strong>Longi.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3588</td>
<td>3588</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3322</td>
<td>3322</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3072</td>
<td>3074</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2967</td>
<td>2965</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2925</td>
<td>2925</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2856</td>
<td>2856</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2074, 1984</td>
<td>2076, 1983</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1746</td>
<td>1747</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>~1652</td>
<td>~1652</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1551-1505</td>
<td>1550-1506</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1455,1414</td>
<td>1457,1413</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1342</td>
<td>1342</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>~1241</td>
<td>~1241</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1180-927</td>
<td>1180-927</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>875</td>
<td>875</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>640-710</td>
<td>640-710</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>607,573</td>
<td>608,570</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Significant differences between healthy and OI bone specimens can be observed in Figure 3.3. For the organic component, C-H stretching bands around 2854 cm\(^{-1}\) and 2926 cm\(^{-1}\) of OI bone exhibit much higher and sharper peaks than those of healthy bone. The appearance of these bands are from organic components such as lipids, proteins, carbohydrates, and nucleic acids (67). Likewise, C=O stretching band at 1747 cm\(^{-1}\) of OI bone also has much higher intensity than that of healthy bone. The C=O stretching band is attributed to lipids, cholesterol esters, and triglycerides (71). These intensity differences indicate that this OI bone specimen contains relatively more non-collagenous organic components (as compared to collagen) than the healthy bone specimen, whereas the band positions remain the same, which suggests that their compositions are not noticeably abnormal. In addition, a new prominent broad band appears at around 640-710 cm\(^{-1}\) in OI bone spectra, which is probably attributed to C-S stretching vibration (72). In some cases of type I OI, glycine can be replaced by small amino acids, such as alanine, serine, and cysteine, near the amino terminal ends of the triple-helical domains of either COL1A1 or COL1A2 (9). The appearance of a C-S vibration band indicates that the collagen molecules or other organics in the OI tibia may contain more cysteine. Since collagen molecules occupy 90% of all organic components in bone, the relatively high intensity of this new band is likely from the type I collagen molecules. Therefore, the structure of collagen molecules may possess more cysteine replacement for glycine. However, another possibility cannot be ruled out that relatively higher concentration of osteonectin, a cysteine-rich phosphorylated glycoprotein, is present in the OI tibia.

The amide I, II, and III bands are major bands of collagen molecules. As seen from Figure 3.4, Amide I (protein C=O stretch, at around 1652 cm\(^{-1}\)) bands of the two sections from healthy bone are similar; however, they are different from those of OI bone. Although
overlapped with OH bending vibration, the amide I band profiles of OI bone are still different, exhibiting significant altered collagen structures. The bands of amide II (Protein N–H bend, C–N stretch) at around 1546-1506 cm\(^{-1}\), CH\(_3\) and carbonate ν3 vibrations at around 1457 and 1413 cm\(^{-1}\), respectively, are not prominent; therefore, they do not show apparent difference between healthy and OI bone specimens. In contrast, the amide III (C-N stretch, N-H bend, C-C stretch) band of healthy bone is apparently different from that of OI bone: a small band at 1275 cm\(^{-1}\) arises in the OI bone spectra; the peak of amide III in the OI spectra is at 1241 cm\(^{-1}\), 5 cm\(^{-1}\) upshifting from that peak in the healthy bone spectra; a band at around 1200 cm\(^{-1}\) in the healthy bone spectra almost disappears in the OI bone spectra. The band of amide III provides both composition and secondary structure information of proteins. Therefore, it is too complex to analyze, but still reflects the significant alteration of the organic component of OI bone from healthy one.

![Figure 3.4. PA-FTIR spectra of human OI cortical bone and healthy cortical bone (longitudinal and transverse sections, respectively) in the 2400-1180 cm\(^{-1}\) region.](image)

104
For the mineral component part, the bands at 3073 cm\(^{-1}\) and 3628 cm\(^{-1}\) from the OI second-derivative spectral curve (Figure 3.5) are assigned to OH asymmetric stretching mode (ν3), and symmetric stretching mode (ν1) for water associated with HAP (64). The appearances of these new bands in the OI bone spectra implies that the water interacts more closely with HAP in OI bone specimen. The band at 3588 cm\(^{-1}\) is attributed to the stretching vibration of the structural hydroxyl group from HAP (64); however, it shifts to higher energy as compared to that band at 3570 cm\(^{-1}\) in healthy bone spectra, implying that the molecular structure of OI HAP is slightly different from healthy bone. The bands at around 2100 cm\(^{-1}\), OH stretching vibrations from P–OH (60), are more prominent in OI bone than in healthy bone. Unlike synthetic HAP, the HAP present in human bone is calcium (Ca)-deficient and contains specific lattice substitutions such as labile and stable CO\(_3^{2-}\) and HPO\(_4^{2-}\) species, and ion vacancies in the apatitic crystals as well (73). Since P-OH originates from HPO\(_4^{2-}\), the stronger intensity of OH stretching vibrations from P-OH band of OI bone indicates that OI bone contains more HPO\(_4^{2-}\) than healthy bone.

Figure 3.5. Inverted second-derivative curves in the energy range of 2400-3900 cm\(^{-1}\).
The ν4 PO₄³⁻ band at 572-610 cm⁻¹ of these two bone specimen appears similar, as shown in Figure 3.6. However, the broad profiles of ν3ν1 PO₄³⁻ band at 1180-927 cm⁻¹ all vary from one another due to orientational effect and the difference of bone species as well. Detailed analysis using curve fitting is described in a subsequent section. The ν2 out-of-plane bending vibration of CO₃²⁻ at 873 cm⁻¹ almost remains in the same band position and shape. However, the ratio of its intensity over ν3ν1 PO₄³⁻ band is lower in OI bone than in healthy bone, indicating that CO₃²⁻ ions present in the OI mineral are less than those in the healthy mineral.

Figure 3.6. PA-FTIR spectra of human OI cortical bone and healthy cortical bone (longitudinal and transverse sections, respectively) in the 1180-420 cm⁻¹ region.

3.3.3. Comparison of PA-FTIR spectra of OI bone in transverse and longitudinal planes

The PA-FTIR spectra of the transverse and longitudinal sections of OI bone are also compared. As for the organic part, as seen in Figure 3.3, the C-H stretching vibrations at around 2855 cm⁻¹ and 2926 cm⁻¹, and C=O stretching vibration at around 1747 cm⁻¹ of the longitudinal section are more intense than those of the transverse section. This phenomenon is also seen in
healthy bone, probably due to more canals crosscut and exposed on the longitudinal section surface (60). As mentioned before, the amide I (protein C=O stretch, at around 1652 cm$^{-1}$) band of OI bone differs from healthy bone. Raman spectral mapping of bone osteonal tissues shows that amide I bands are more intense in the perpendicular direction to the fiber axis since C=O bonds are perpendicular to the collagen backbone, while amide III, v2 and v4PO$_4^{3-}$ vibrations are observed to be less sensitive to orientation effects (74). Unlike Raman spectroscopy, in FTIR studies, the amide I band is overlapped by O-H bending band from water. Therefore, the orientational difference of the amide I band is not easily seen. However, in OI, the amide I band of the longitudinal section differs from that of the transverse section as can be seen in Figure 3.7. The bands of amide II (Protein N−H bend, C−N stretch) at around 1546-1506 cm$^{-1}$, and CH$_3$ and carbonate ν3 vibrations at around 1457 and 1413 cm$^{-1}$, respectively, are all more intense in the longitudinal section than in the transverse section. These effects have also been observed in the amide III band.

![Inverted second-derivative curves of OI longitudinal and transverse sections in the 1720-1590 cm$^{-1}$ region.](image)

Figure 3.7. Inverted second-derivative curves of OI longitudinal and transverse sections in the 1720-1590 cm$^{-1}$ region.
For the mineral part, the O-H stretching bands from P-OH at around 2000 cm\(^{-1}\) from the transverse section is stronger than that of the longitudinal section, indicating that the transverse section contains more HPO\(_4^{2-}\) than the longitudinal section. From Figure 3.3, more CO\(_3^{2-}\) ion content and less HPO\(_4^{2-}\) ion in the longitudinal sections than in the transverse sections are also noticed. The broad profile of \(\nu_3\nu_1\) PO\(_4^{3-}\) band at 1180-927 cm\(^{-1}\) arises from 12 sub-bands (Table 3.2). Curve fitting in this region is performed based on the second derivative of the curves with the normalization depicted in Figure 3.8 (a) and (b). The ratio of the 1023/1038 cm\(^{-1}\) bands (often used to describe the relative amount of crystal perfection or amount of non-stoichiometric apatite in the lattice) \((58, 75, 76)\) in the transverse section is 0.45, while, in the longitudinal section, it is 0.21. Further, the sub-band area at around 1090 cm\(^{-1}\) (often used to describe the amount of stoichiometric apatite in the lattice) \((58, 75, 76)\) in the longitudinal section is larger than that in the transverse section. Therefore, OI bone appears to be more stoichiometric in the longitudinal section surface. This phenomenon is the same as in healthy bone \((60)\).

### 3.3.4. XRD and EDS results

Usually a sample of bone tissue contains crystals of very different ages and stages of maturation. The ages and the stages of maturation are attributed to the length of time the individual crystals remain in the tissue and the remodeling proceeds heterogeneously throughout the life \((79)\). In this XRD experiment, a piece of copper filter with a 10mm\(\times\)1mm window was used to focus that size of the beam on the samples. The mineral information acquired by XRD reflects an average from that size of bone tissue. XRD is sensitive to the long-range crystalline structure of the material \((80)\).
Figure 3.8. (a) Curve fitting analysis of the ν1, ν3 phosphate band (1180–927 cm⁻¹) of (a) Transverse section, and (b) Longitudinal section.
Table 3.2. Major components of the ν1, ν3 PO$_4^{3-}$ bands (75, 77, 78).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Position Transverse</th>
<th>Area Transverse</th>
<th>Position Longitudinal</th>
<th>Area Longitudinal</th>
<th>Band assignment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1160</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>1160</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>HPO$_4^{2-}$ containing apatites</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1120</td>
<td>134</td>
<td>1120</td>
<td>121</td>
<td>ν3 PO$_4^{3-}$ in Poorly crystalline apatites</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1107</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>1108</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>ν3 PO$_4^{3-}$ in Poorly crystalline apatites</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1090</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>1089</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>ν3 PO$_4^{3-}$ in stoichiometric HA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1075</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>1073</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>ν3 PO$_4^{3-}$ in Poorly crystalline apatites</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1061</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>1060</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>ν3 PO$_4^{3-}$ in Poorly crystalline apatites</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1045</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>1043</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>HPO$_4^{2-}$ containing apatites and type B carbonate-containing apatites</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1038</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>1036</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>PO$_4^{3-}$ in stoichiometric HA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1022</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>1025</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>Nonstoichiometric apatites containing HPO$_4^{2-}$ and/or CO$_3^{2-}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1004</td>
<td>83</td>
<td>1005</td>
<td>97</td>
<td>ν3 PO$_4^{3-}$ in apatitic environment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1001</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>998</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>ν3 PO$_4^{3-}$ in apatitic environment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>959</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>959</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>ν1 PO$_4^{3-}$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 3.9 shows the X-ray diffraction profiles of healthy and OI bone specimens, with their transverse section and longitudinal section, respectively. The profiles show obvious intensity peaks of (002), (211), (202), (310), (203), (213), and (004) planes. All the profiles are normalized at the strongest peak of (211) reflection. As compared to the well-crystallized HAP (81), all X-ray lines of bone specimens are broadened except (002) reflection. The X-ray
line broadening is mainly due to smaller crystallite size (<200nm) and lattice strain or crystal distortions resulting from atomic substitutions within the crystal lattice. The (211) broad profile is overlapped with (112), (300), and (202) reflections (82). The (002) reflection is the only one free of any overlapping adjacent lines. This (002) reflection reflects the length axis of the bone crystal with minimal strain influence. The average crystallite size in the c-axis direction was found to increase with age under 20 years old, and reach a constant average domain size above 20 years old. Microstrain has the opposite trend and decreases to a constant small average strain value above 20 years old (see the figures in (82)). In this study, the healthy bone sample is 27 years old; the OI bone sample is 22 years old. Therefore, we can ignore the aging effects and only consider disease as affecting crystal size. Scherrer equation has been employed to calculate the crystal size in other bone studies (30, 36, 83). The present study also uses Scherrer equation, and the crystal sizes along c-axis direction of healthy and OI bone specimen are listed in Table 3.3. The crystal sizes along c-axis direction of healthy bone in the transverse and longitudinal sections are calculated as 28.35 and 25.82 nm, whereas the crystal sizes of OI bone in the transverse and longitudinal sections are 28.42 and 20.80 nm, respectively. It seems that the direction of specimens affects the results. The crystal sizes from the two transverse sections are the greatest among all the specimens, and they are very close. The biggest difference is from the two longitudinal sections. These differences are still under investigation with orientational effect. Since the c-axis is perpendicular to the transverse section plane, the signals from the transverse sections are much stronger than the longitudinal section. The (002) plane also shows apparent orientational difference: the transverse section is more intense in both healthy and OI bone specimens than the longitudinal section. In addition, the experimental error due to the weak signal in the longitudinal section cannot be ignored.
Overall, the crystal size along the c-axis direction of OI bone is close to healthy bone, implying that OI and healthy bone have almost identical mineral crystals.

To further investigate the elemental ratios in bone specimens, Energy-dispersive X-ray spectroscopy (EDS) in SEM was used to examine Ca/P molar ratio. As seen in Table 3.4, for the same kind of samples, the Ca/P molar ratio of healthy and OI bone specimens are similar.

![X-ray diffractogram of bone specimens: Healthy bone (T-transverse section and L-longitudinal section) and OI bone specimens.](image)

Figure 3.9. X-ray diffractogram of bone specimens: Healthy bone (T-transverse section and L-longitudinal section) and OI bone specimens.

Table 3.3. Crystal size along c-axis direction of bone mineral (nm).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bone sample</th>
<th>Transverse section</th>
<th>Longitudinal section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Healthy bone</td>
<td>28.35</td>
<td>25.82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OI bone</td>
<td>28.42</td>
<td>20.80</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 3.4. Ca/P molar ratio of bone specimens (±STD).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bone sample</th>
<th>Transverse section</th>
<th>Longitudinal section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Healthy bone</td>
<td>1.53 ± 0.06</td>
<td>1.41 ± 0.09</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OI bone</td>
<td>1.46 ± 0.02</td>
<td>1.42 ± 0.02</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.4. Discussion

The classic non-deforming OI cases either result from mutations in one COL1A1 allele or substitutions for glycine by a small amino acid (cysteine, alanine and serine). As the mutations are heterozygous, some of the gene products still should be normal. Even in severe OI, there are normal lamellar bone structures composed of normally mineralized fibrils (62). In the present study, FE-SEM images show some normal lamellae. Meanwhile, these images also reveal significant altered structures of OI bone from healthy bone on all scales, e.g.: OI bone is more porous and fibrous; OI bone contains abnormal collagen fibril areas and over mineralized deposits; and an abnormal banding pattern of mineralized fibrils. The changes in bone porosity at the tissue level indicate changes in bone metabolism and altered bone mechanical integrity. The loosely attached fibrils and condensed mineral areas are the signs of weakened intermolecular adhesion and interaction between collagen molecules and mineral phase. The abnormal banding pattern of mineralized fibrils demonstrates the influence of the poor collagen matrix, which serves as a framework for biomineralization. It seems that the whole bone structure as seen in SEM images is significantly altered due to the collagen defects and secondary changes caused by the collagen defects.

PA-FTIR spectra display aberrant structures of collagen molecules and slightly altered minerals. According to FTIR analysis of the organic components: (1) The C-H stretching bands and C=O stretching bands from the non-collagenous organic components exhibit similar shape
and position in the OI spectra as in the healthy bone spectra, implying that the main compositions of the non-collagenous organic components are not noticeably abnormal. However, the volume of the non-collagenous organic components is relatively greater because of their higher intensity. This phenomenon can result from the porous feature of OI bone which can accommodate more non-collagenous proteins (NCPs). In a previous study, the amount of total protein synthesized by osteoblasts from patients with mild to moderately severe forms of OI was found normal when compared to that of an age-matched control (18). It is generally regarded that increased levels of NCPs in OI bone reflect a reduced collagen content, leaving space that is passively filled by deposition of some NCPs (28). This viewpoint accords with the present FTIR results; (2) The collagen molecules of OI bone have altered structures due to the apparently altered amide I and amide III bands; and (3) The appearance of a new band at 705-640 cm\(^{-1}\) implies that more cysteine may be contained in the collagen molecules as substitutions or/and higher concentration of osteonectin (a cysteine-rich phosphorylated glycoprotein) is present in OI tibia. Osteonectin was found reduced in bones from OI patients as compared with age-matched normal controls (18, 28). However, as seen from the figure in (18), the amount of collagen from OI type I is about 20% of age-matched normal controls while the amount of osteonectin from OI type I is about 60% of age-matched normal controls. Therefore, in comparison with collagen, osteonectin is highly increased in OI type I bone. The source of this C-S band requires further study through either collagen analysis or NCPs analysis.

The mineral component shows three different kinds of OH stretching bands between OI and healthy bones: (1) The first kind of OH stretching bands shows two new bands at 3703 and 3628 cm\(^{-1}\), and their appearance indicates that water interacts more closely with HAP in OI bone specimens; (2) The upshifting 12 cm\(^{-1}\) of the stretching vibration of the structural hydroxyl group
from hydroxyapatite implies that the molecular structure of OI hydroxyapatite is slightly different from healthy bone; (3) Around 2000 cm\(^{-1}\), bands of OH stretching vibrations from P–OH of OI bone are more prominent than in healthy bone, indicating that OI bone may contain more HPO\(_4^{2-}\) ions. This agrees with a previous study which demonstrates increased acid phosphate content in Brtl/+ teeth (59). In contrast to the OH stretching bands, the intensity ratio of \(v_2\) CO\(_3^{2-}\) over \(v_3\)vl PO\(_4^{3-}\) band in OI is lower than in healthy bone, indicating less CO\(_3^{2-}\) ions in OI mineral. This lower CO\(_3^{2-}\)/PO\(_4^{3-}\) ratio has also been found in several OI bone studies (34, 38). However, PO\(_4^{3-}\) and CO\(_3^{2-}\) bands of OI bone do not display significant differences as compared to healthy bone. Therefore, in OI, the mineral component does not have significant molecular alterations. Our XRD and EDS results on both healthy and OI bone specimens also support that the mineral crystals in OI are not significantly altered. Studies of phosphorus-31 solid state nuclear magnetic resonance (\(^{31}\)P-NMR) spectra also suggest that the bulk of the phosphorus in both healthy and OI samples is present in the same phase (40). No detectable defect of matrix mineralization was found in OI patients by histomorphometric study (44). For the type I OI, crystal size is reduced in children only and returns to normal in adolescence (36). As mentioned before, the bone samples investigated in the present study are both from post adolescence. Therefore, it is reasonable that our samples do not show significant alterations. In another study, it is reported that the monovalent ion OH\(^-\) within the apatite tunnels can be easily exchanged at high temperatures without any crystal alteration, whereas the trivalent ion PO\(_4^{3-}\) and bivalent ion Ca\(^{2+}\) that constitute the apatite frame can be substituted, but with structure reorganization (84). Therefore, in OI, there are alterations of OH\(^-\) groups, but these alterations do not remarkably influence the whole crystal structure. Instead, they change the mineral ion environment, making it more attachable to water and elevating the number of HPO\(_4^{2-}\) ions in the
hydrated layer of the mineral crystal. The improved attachability of OI bone mineral to water and the nonstoichiometry of the mineral favor the resorption of bone by osteoclasts.

$^{31}$P-NMR spin-spin relaxation studies (85) show that a substantial fraction of the protonated phosphates ($\text{HPO}_4^{2-}$) are situated on the surfaces of the bone mineral crystals and the concentration of unprotonated phosphates ($\text{PO}_4^{3-}$) within the apatitic lattice increases toward the center of the crystal. The studies also demonstrate that the younger, less mature biological crystals contain a higher concentration of the surface $\text{HPO}_4^{2-}$ groups. C. Rey et al. (79) find that maturation of bone mineral is accompanied by an increase of $\text{CO}_3^{2-}$ ion content and a decrease of $\text{HPO}_4^{-2}$ ion content. When bone is more mature, the mineral also becomes more stoichiometric (75). Our FTIR spectra exhibit increased $\text{CO}_3^{2-}$ ion content and reduced $\text{HPO}_4^{-2}$ ion content in healthy bone than in OI bone, implying that healthy bone is more mature than OI bone, which also suggests that healthy bone is more stoichiometric. The piece of healthy bone in the present study is 5 years older than the OI bone. The difference in maturation between OI and healthy bone mineral may originate from both the age difference and the OI disease. In our previous paper (60), we discussed that the longitudinal section is more stoichiometric than the transverse section. This phenomenon is attributed to the reduced interaction between exchangeable ions contained within the mineral surface and collagen molecules in the longitudinal section rather than the interaction between the mineral surface and collagen termini in the transverse section. Therefore, the nonstoichiometry of OI bone mineral might also be influenced by the interactions between the collagen and mineral.

It is noteworthy that 1020/1030cm$^{-1}$ has long been regarded as the measure of “crystallinity/maturity index” of bone mineral, and the more crystalline/mature, the more
hydroxyapatite-like stoichiometry, the bigger the crystalline size, and the less the ion substitution by ions such as CO$_3^{2-}$ (76, 86). However, Farlay et al. argued that an increase in 1030/1020 ratio is not necessarily related to an increase of crystal size in human bone and therefore this ratio should only be maturity index (73). A more recent work agrees with Farley et al.’s point when the crystal size is measured by XRD (39). Regardless of crystallinity and maturity, 1030cm$^{-1}$ and 1020cm$^{-1}$ are assigned to stoichiometric and nonstoichiometric apatite; therefore, in the present study, stoichiometry is used as a description of the mineral phase instead of crystallinity or maturity.

Our FTIR spectra also exhibit the trend of more CO$_3^{2-}$ ion content and less HPO$_4^{2-}$ ion content in the longitudinal section of OI bone than in the transverse section, implying that the longitudinal section is more stoichiometric for the same reason as previously discussed. This conclusion, which concurs with our curve-fitting analysis in the results section, is also in accordance with the prior spectral study on healthy bone (60). Since the crystalline HAP core is stoichiometric, the nonstoichiometric ions and vacancies are located on the mineral surface as the hydrated layer. The transverse section is more nonstoichiometric, implying that the hydrated layer in the transverse plane has a greater volume than it does in the longitudinal plane. This schematic nanocrystal of bone mineral is illustrated in Figure 3.10. This structure is similar to what Jager et al. suggests based on solid-state NMR studies (87).
It appears that collagen type I abnormalities lead to secondary changes in the mineral phase of the bone material due to the poor collagen framework and the interactions between collagen molecules and mineral surfaces. However, Roschger et al. suggest that the tissue- and materials- abnormalities found in OI-I seem to be independent of the collagen mutations because no differences of mineralization (measured by quantitative backscattered electron imaging (qBEI)) are found between two different OI mutation types (qualitative and quantitative) (32). Roschger et al. prefers a failure in the osteoblast differentiation pathway and concomitant synthesis of noncollagenous matrix proteins as the cause of OI phenotype (32). Likewise, Jones et al. claims that the increased mineral content, which seems to be the hallmark for all types of OI, is due to impaired osteoblastic function rather than to the altered structure of the collagen matrix, since increased cellularity, increased osteocyte lacunar density and abnormal areas of woven bone have been observed in different types of OI (88). Impaired osteoblast differentiation, abnormal metabolism and altered secretion of non-collagenous proteins are common features in
OI (18). The proliferative capacity and growth rate of OI cells are reduced relatively to normal cells (89). Striking abnormalities in the differentiation pathway of bone marrow progenitor cells towards osteoblasts have been recently demonstrated in an OI mouse model (90). It is also believed that altered osteoblastic differentiation may arise from altered extracellular matrix feedback into cellular metabolism, since the pattern of expression and fine structure of the proteoglycans (PGs) were consistent with OI-derived osteoblasts, failing to follow a developmental differentiation pattern (27). Bone histomorphometry also reveals that osteoblasts from affected patients produce only half the amount of collagen matrix; however, the adaptation of skeleton to the increasing mechanical needs during growth is improved by increased recruitment of remodeling units, yet this improvement cannot compensate for the bone loss (44). The increased remodeling process is reflected by elevated osteoclast formation; meanwhile, decreased osteoblast function is also seen in OI mice models (91, 92). Besides impaired osteoblast and osteoclast functions, increased numbers of osteocytes and multiple osteocytes in some lacunae of OI are observed in human bone (49). In bone homeostasis, osteoblasts sense osteocyte apoptosis via gap junctions; and then osteoblasts trigger osteoclast maturation and recruitment (93). Therefore, in OI bone, cellular interactions with abnormal matrix and compromised osteoblast development influence signaling between osteoblasts and osteoclasts, increasing bone remodeling and exacerbating the bone weakness caused by the primary collagen change. All in all, secreted mutant collagen from OI bone affects fibril structure, interactions of NCPs with matrix, matrix mineralization, osteoblast development, and cell-cell and cell-matrix cross-talk (7).

It has long been debated whether or not collagen or non-collagenous proteins (NCPs) initiate intrafibrillar mineralization. In addition, the debate extends to the mechanisms producing
intrafibrillar mineralization at the molecular level (94). Many believe that the biomineralization process is controlled by bone cells and interactive noncollagenous phosphorylated proteins, and is also influenced by collagen (95). Osteoblast cells derived from OI patients are found to have reduced levels of collagen, osteonectin, three proteoglycans (a large chondroitin sulfate proteoglycan, biglycan, and decorin), and elevated amounts of thrombospondin and fibronectin when compared with levels found in age-matched control bone cell cultures (18, 96). In another study, osteonectin is found to be reduced in the bone of all OI patients, with the lowest levels from severely affected type III OI patients (28). These alterations in NCPs give rise to an extracellular matrix with an aberrant stoichiometry (18). In the present study, osteonectin is probably the source of the C-S band at around 640-710 cm\(^{-1}\) from OI bone. Osteonectin is found in highest concentrations in developing bone and thereby regarded as related to mineral nucleation and mineral crystal formation with the ability to bind Ca\(^{2+}\) ions (97, 98). The relative higher amount of osteonectin as compared to collagen (18) might be the cause of the high mineralization of OI bone. Except for the probable abnormal amount of osteonectin, the overall composition of NCPs in OI do not show remarkable change as compared to healthy bone in IR spectra, and the crystal structure and Ca/P ratio as investigated by XRD and EDS do not have significant differences between OI and healthy bones. Conversely, collagen molecules are significantly altered. Therefore, we also claim that the biomineralization process is more controlled by NCPs than collagen.

It should be noted that there are several limitations in this study: (1) Sample size is obviously insufficient to address many important questions. For statistical reasons, more OI samples and more controlled samples are required; (2) Collagen analysis or NCPs analysis of the
OI bone is required to confirm the source of the C-S band at around 640-710 cm\(^{-1}\) on FTIR spectra.

3.5. Conclusion

With OI disease, the mutations in procollagen molecules cause aberrant collagen molecules and secondary changes in mineral, NCPs, and cell activities due to their interactions and cross-talks with collagen matrix. In the present study, FE-SEM, PA-FTIR, XRD and EDS are utilized to characterize the OI human cortical bone (putative type I) and healthy human cortical bone. The study demonstrates that OI bone structure is significantly altered due to collagen defects. FE-SEM images show more porous, fibrous features, abnormal collagen fibrils, overmineralized deposits, as well as an altered banding pattern of mineralized fibrils of OI bone. PA-FTIR spectra demonstrate altered OI collagen molecules with a markedly different amide III band and the appearance of a new C-S band which might be caused by a collagen defect (cysteine replacement of glycine) or/and an increased amount of osteonectin (a cysteine-rich phosphorylated glycoprotein). The slightly altered mineral structure in the OH\(^{-}\) group and more HPO\(_4^{2-}\) in OI is also seen in the spectra. However, NCPs in OI do not show significant alteration in shape or position in spectra except for their higher intensity. These phenomena indicate that the biomineralization process is more controlled by the bone cells and non-collagenous phosphorylated proteins as suggested by other studies. However, the biomineralization process is also significantly influenced by the collagen, in addition to the interactions between the collagen molecules and mineral phase. PA-FTIR spectra also show that OI bone mineral is more attachable to water and is more nonstoichiometric than healthy bone, which can result from the altered mineral ion environment. The loosely attached fibrils and condensed mineral areas are the
results of weakened intermolecular adhesions and poor collagen frameworks. Also, the banding pattern of mineralized fibrils is slightly altered in OI because of the altered collagen framework. OI bone has the same orientational stoichiometry of hydroxyapatite as healthy cortical bone; that is; the longitudinal section is more stoichiometric than the transverse section. This orientational stoichiometry results from the interaction between the mineral surface and the different parts of collagen molecules as discussed in our previous study (290). The larger volume of the hydrated layer in the transverse plane of bone mineral nanocrystal is also suggested. It should be stressed that further study involving collagen analysis or NCPs analysis of the OI bone is needed.

3.6. Acknowledgements

Instrumentation obtained from National Science Foundation MRI grants is acknowledged for enabling experiments conducted in this work. I would like to acknowledge the assistance in electron microscopy laboratory from Mr. Scott Payne. I would also like to acknowledge the support from Doctoral Dissertation Award of NDSU graduate school.

3.7. References


CHAPTER 4. NANOMECHANICAL PROPERTIES OF UNDISTURBED HUMAN NORMAL AND OSTEOGENESIS IMPERFECTA CORTICAL BONES

This chapter presents nanomechanical properties of undisturbed healthy and OI human cortical bones measured by modulus mapping and in situ FE-SEM nanoindentation.

4.1. Introduction

Nanoindentation has been widely utilized to examine elastic modulus and hardness of bone (1-7). The reported nanoindentation values for human femur vary from 16.58 to 26.6 GPa for elastic modulus, and ranging from 234 to 840 MPa for hardness (4, 5, 8-11). The nanoindentation depth in these studies is at least 150 nm. Over that last 15 years, modulus mapping technique, is utilized to study the surface modulus of materials for small areas with high spatial resolution. Modulus mapping measures the elastic properties of a material surface by applying extremely shallow displacements (2 to 3 nm). Detailed descriptions of the principle of modulus mapping can be found in the literature (12, 13). This technique has been utilized to measure mechanical properties of trabecular bone of osteoporotic rats (14), bone matrix of mice (15), trabecular bone of glucocorticoid-treated mice (14-16), bone nodules (17), and human trabecular bone extracted from proximal femur (18). Bone is anisotropic and heterogeneous, so the local variations in mechanical properties detectable with this technique play an important role in controlling the mechanical behavior at macroscopic length scales. Hence, in this work, modulus mapping technique is used to examine the surface mechanical property variation of human cortical bones in longitudinal and transverse planes. We also attempt to reveal the relationship between structure and mechanical properties at the nanometer level.
Other than examining surface properties, nanoindentation generally measures the bulk properties of material. The structure and mechanical properties of bone vary markedly at different sites due to the complex constituents and heterogeneity. In order to investigate mechanical properties of bone, typically hundreds of indents are required. Also, the scanning process using a traditional triboscope instrument is time consuming. In contrast, in situ field emission-scanning electron microscopy (FE-SEM) nanoindentation provides a new tool to investigate the mechanical properties of materials with simultaneous imaging and precise positioning of the indenter. A quantitative nanoindentation system integrated into a high-resolution SEM was developed recently (19) and the real-time observation of the nanoindentation test also allows for visualization of certain material deformation behaviors such as pileup, sink-in and delamination. The in situ FE-SEM nanoindentation technique has been utilized to study the mechanical behavior of several metallic and semiconductive materials (19-29), and nacre (30) as well. Here we use SEM nanoindentation to investigate the nanomechanical properties of human cortical bones.

Bone with Osteogenesis imperfecta (OI) disease is characterized by the fragility, primarily due to a causative variant in one of the two structural genes (COL1A1 or COL1A2) for the type I procollagens. The amount of collagen from OI bone is observed to be less than that from age-matched normal controls (31). The distribution of D-periodic spacing values was found to be distinctive between Brtl/+ (a kind of OI type) mouse phenotype and normal one (32, 33). In addition, smaller, less well aligned, highly packed mineral crystals with decreased crystallinity, and higher mineral/matrix ratio are found in OI bone (34-40). The heterogeneity of OI bone mineralization in literature show different trends: increased heterogeneity in high bone mineralization density (BMD) OI (41) and reduced heterogeneity in OI-I patients (42). However,
the details of extrafibrillar mineral of bone and the nanomechanical properties of OI bone are not well understood. Here, in order to have a better understanding of the extrafibrillar mineral and the arrangements of mineral and collagen in the near-surface area, both modulus mapping and in situ FE-SEM nanoindentation techniques have been utilized to observe the nanomechanical properties of undisturbed normal and OI bone.

Mechanical properties of bone are orders of magnitude better than a simple sum of the individual components of bone (43) due to the interactions among the organic phase, mineral phase, and noncollagenous proteins (44, 45). Research shows that collagen alone fails to bind calcium or phosphate ions of mineral. However, the stereochemical configurations and charges provided by specific amino acid residues of collagen can bind calcium and phosphate ions and likely provide sufficient closeness to induce ion interaction (46). In addition, the interaction between collagen and mineral is mediated by noncollagenous acidic proteins which are bound to the triple helices of collagen (47). Our group’s modeling work demonstrated that the mechanical behavior of collagen is significantly influenced by collagen-mineral interaction as well as collagen-water-mineral interactions (45, 48, 49). Nevertheless, the commonly used pretreatment on bone samples such as dehydration affects the interactions and mechanical properties of bone (50, 51). Furthermore, The indentation moduli of bone specimens were reported to increase from 11% to 28% after dehydration (6, 50, 52, 53), with additional increase after embedding (53). Therefore, in the present work, “undisturbed” bone specimens are used to study their nanomechanical properties.
4.2. Materials and Methods

4.2.1. Materials

The normal human femur (no apparent metabolic bone disease record, 27 years old, female) and OI human tibia (no apparent metabolic bone disease record, 22 years old, female with pregnancy experience) were both obtained from National Disease Research Interchange, PA and stored in a freezer at -70°C. The OI type is putative type I, the mildest type, because the person had a height of 67 inches and weight of 180lb. One 20-mm-thick transverse section was cut from the mid-diaphysis of the femur with a low-speed diamond saw. Then, it was further cut with a low-speed diamond-wafering blade (Buehler, Isomet, Lake Bluff, IL) to obtain specimens with thickness of about 1 mm in both transverse and longitudinal directions (Figure 4.1). Marrow and flesh were removed by scraping with a ceramic knife and then the bone was washed with deionized (DI) water at room temperature in approximately 10 minutes to avoid deterioration of bone.

In order to perform modulus mapping and nanoindentation, the specimens were ground with silicon carbide paper (Buehler, 600, 800 and 1200 grit) and polished using a series of diamond compound paste (Buehler, 3 μm, 1 μm, 0.25 μm) on cloth and finished by polishing with 0.02 μm non-crystallizing colloidal silica polishing suspension. After each polishing step, the specimens were ultrasonically cleaned in DI water for 30 seconds (the total rinsing time was limited about 3.5 minutes to avoid demineralization (54)).
In order to perform modulus mapping and nanoindentation, the specimens were ground with silicon carbide paper (Buehler, 600, 800 and 1200 grit) and polished using a series of diamond compound paste (Buehler, 3 µm, 1 µm, 0.25 µm) on cloth and finished by polishing with 0.02 µm non-crystallizing colloidal silica polishing suspension. After each polishing step, the specimens were ultrasonically cleaned in DI water for 30 seconds (the total rinsing time was limited about 3.5 minutes to avoid demineralization (54)).

4.2.2. Methods

Modulus mapping experiments were conducted on a Hysitron triboscope nanomechanical instrument (Minneapolis, MN), equipped with a Nanoscope IIIa controller (Veeco Metrology, Santa Barbara, CA) with a Berkovich (three-sided pyramid, 100–200 nm tip radius) diamond indenter tip. Modulus maps of the surface of bone specimens were acquired by applying a quasi-static force of 3 µN with a superimposed 1-2 µN sinusoidal force at a frequency of 200 Hz. The sinusoidal dynamic force was adjusted while scanning to get AC displacement amplitude of approximately 1nm. Each of the images created have a pixel resolution of 256×256, meaning 65,536 individual modulus values are acquired. Tip shape calibration was performed using a
standard fused quartz sample of known elastic modulus. During the performance of experiments, dry helium was kept flowing into the experimental chamber (Figure 4.2) to prevent bacteria growth as much as possible (55). Although carefully polished, many holes still existed in the bone specimens such as canals, lacunae, and canaliculi; the maps with these holes were excluded from the results.

Figure 4.2. Modulus mapping instrument

Nanoindentation tests were performed with a Hysitron PI-85 nanomechanical instrument with a Berkovich tip made of boron-through-doped diamond (Minneapolis, MN), which was installed in a high-resolution Field Emission Scanning Electron Microscope (FE-SEM, mode: Jeol JSM-7600F). Detailed descriptions of the principle of this instrument can be found in the literature (19). The probe was also calibrated on fused quartz. Lower secondary electron images (LEI) were obtained by FE-SEM while nanoindentation was performed.

The elastic modulus and hardness of bone are determined by using the common method developed by Oliver and Pharr (56). The Young’s modulus is calculated using the following equation (4.1):

\[
\text{Young's modulus} = \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{1 - v^2}{E} \right) \frac{F}{d^3}
\]

Where: \(E\) is the elastic modulus, \(v\) is Poisson's ratio, \(F\) is the load, and \(d\) is the depth of penetration.
where $E$ is the elastic modulus, $\nu$ is Poisson's ratio, $s$ and $i$ refer to sample and indenter tip material, respectively. $E_r$ is the reduced modulus which can be obtained from indentation curve; $\nu_s$ of bone is set to 0.3; $E_i$ and $\nu_i$ are the same quantities for the diamond indenter: $E_i = 1141$ GPa, $\nu_i = 0.07$.

In situ FE-SEM nanoindentation was performed with static load control; 50 µN was applied as the load for the samples on the transverse section plane (Figure 4.3a). An interlamellar cement band is obviously seen in the figure and separates the osteon and interstitial lamellae. Thirty indents were performed inside the osteon, and ten indents outside the osteon. For the samples on the longitudinal plane (Figure 4.3b), 15 µN, 50 µN, and 100 µN were applied with thirty indents for each load. To avoid pile-up effect, indent spacing was set about 0.8 µm. Some surface defects were observed (e.g., pitch, cracks, pop-outs) and excluded from the nanoindentation.

![Figure 4.3](image)

Figure 4.3. In situ HR-SEM nanoindentation were performed on (a) Transverse surface; (b) Longitudinal surface.
4.3. Results

4.3.1. Modulus mapping

The representative modulus maps of normal bone for the longitudinal and transverse sections are shown in Figure 4.4a and Figure 4.4c, respectively. These two figures display the nanomechanical properties from the areas of 2µm×2µm and 5µm×5µm, respectively. The corresponding elastic modulus values in the longitudinal section are marked as black lines in Figure 4.4b. Figure 4.4d is the square subset of Figure 4.4c. Figure 4.4b shows a periodicity of elastic modulus along the marked line. Every peak spans about 140-167 nm on average in Figure 4.4b. Scale bars in Figure 4.4a and Figure 4.4c display the range of the modulus values in these two maps: 10.86-45.37 GPa and 6.2-120.9 GPa, respectively. The scale bars exhibit large variation among different areas of bone specimens. The bright areas in these figures correspond to the materials with higher modulus values than those dark areas. In Figure 4.4a and Figure 4.4c, the mineralized collagen fibers can also be clearly seen. In Figure 4.4d, the short white line “a” passes through 4 mineralized collagen fibers and the diameter of each mineralized collagen fiber is measured as about 122.42nm. Bright plates and dots are observed in Figure 4.4c. Since they possess greater modulus, they are likely arising from mineral crystals or mineral crystal agglomerates. Several bright plates shown in Figure 4.4d are measured and noted as “b”, “c”, and “d”. The area noted as “b” contains 6 plates. The white line perpendicular to these plates is measured with each periodicity at about 61.98nm. The bright plate noted as “c” has a length of 93.50nm and a width of 40.00nm, while the “d” plate has a length of 100.23nm and a width of 26.98nm. It is also clearly seen that the size of other bright plates or dots are similar or smaller to “c” and “d” plates.
Figure 4.4. Modulus map images and corresponding data of normal human bone. (a) Modulus map image for the longitudinal section, area: 2µm×2µm; (b) Modulus data of the black line in Figure a; (c) Modulus map image for the transverse section, area: 5µm×5µm; (d) The square subset in Figure c.

The representative modulus maps of OI bone for the transverse and longitudinal sections are shown in Figure 4.5a and Figure 4.5d, respectively. Both figures display the nanomechanical properties from 3µm×3µm areas. Scale bars in Figure 4.5a and Figure 4.5d display the range of the modulus values in these two maps: 20.5-99.8 GPa and 3.0-199.1 GPa, respectively. The scale bars also exhibit great variation among different areas of OI bone specimens. The square subsets of Figure 4.5a and Figure 4.5d are shown in Figure 4.5b and Figure 4.5e. In Figure 5b, the white line crosses 3 mineralized collagen fibers, and the diameter of each fiber is about 78.75 nm.
Similar to the normal bone, Figure 4.5c also shows a periodicity of elastic modulus along the black line from Figure 4.5a. Each peak spans about 176 nm on average, which corresponds to collagen fiber bundles. In Figure 4.5d, many bright dots are distributed and are attributed to bone mineral crystals. The magnified square is shown in Figure 4.5e. The bright dot “a” has a length of 40.19 nm and a width of 28.05 nm, while the bright dot “b” has a length of 32.10 nm and a width of 24.00 nm. Plate “C” has a length of 64.19 nm and a width of 24.00 nm. As compared to normal bone shown in Figure 4.4d, it appears that the mineral crystals in OI bone exhibit more “dot” style instead of “plate” form and the length/width ratio is lower than that of normal bone. Figure 4.5f does not show as obvious periodicity as Figure 4.5c or Figure 4.4b since the black line in Figure 4.5d goes through observable dark lines (observed in Figure 4.5e), which represent pure collagen fibrils or noncollagenous organic matrix areas. As seen in Figure 4.5f, the dots exhibit pit-like appearance in “a” and “b” areas and are consistently about 5.1 GPa.
Figure 4.5. Modulus map images and corresponding data of OI human bone. (a) Modulus map image for the transverse section, area: 3µm×3µm; (b) The square subset in Figure a; (c) Modulus data of the black line in Figure a; (d) Modulus map image for the longitudinal section, area: 3µm×3µm; (e) The square subset in Figure c; (f) Modulus data of the black line in Figure d.
The elastic moduli data drawn from all modulus maps (data are from 10 black lines from each modulus map) are shown in Figure 4.6, and the corresponding statistical results are listed in Table 4.1. It is seen that the highest elastic modulus values are in the range of 12.86-22.52 GPa (Q1-Q3) for normal bone, which is in agreement with those data of mineralized collagen fibrils obtained from other techniques such as nanoindentation or acoustic method (57). The median moduli for the longitudinal and transverse sections are 18.69 and 16.79 GPa, respectively. It is also observed in Table 4.1 that the minimum elastic modulus is 2.42 GPa, which is quite similar to that of pure collagen (totally demineralized bone) observed experimentally (58) and through steered molecular dynamics (59, 60). This minimum elastic modulus can be attributed to that from near-pure collagen. The highest elastic modulus is observed to be 189.85 GPa, which can arise from near-pure mineral because the elastic modulus of hydroxyapatite is from 135 GPa (61) to 150 GPa (62-64) and acquired using nanoindentation method. However, values of high elastic moduli above 100 GPa are only present in very few points of all maps.

![Figure 4.6. Elastic modulus results produced by modulus mapping on the longitudinal and transverse sections of both normal and OI bones. Bars show the median with 25th (Q1) and 75th (Q3) percentiles. The lines perpendicular to the box are whiskers. Upper limit of whisker = Q3 + 1.5 (Q3 - Q1); lower limit of whisker = Q1 - 1.5 (Q3 - Q1). *outliers of the whisker. (N=35840).](image-url)
Table 4.1 Statistics of elastic moduli from all modulus maps (Figure 4.4 and Figure 4.5)a.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sample</th>
<th>Q1 (GPa)</th>
<th>Median (GPa)</th>
<th>Q3 (GPa)</th>
<th>Whisker (GPa)</th>
<th>Max. (GPa)</th>
<th>Min. (GPa)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>Longitudinal</td>
<td>15.83</td>
<td>18.69</td>
<td>21.57</td>
<td>7.21-30.19</td>
<td>189.85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Transverse</td>
<td>12.86</td>
<td>16.79</td>
<td>22.52</td>
<td>3.10-37.00</td>
<td>169.31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OI</td>
<td>Longitudinal</td>
<td>20.80</td>
<td>27.63</td>
<td>37.78</td>
<td>5.93-63.22</td>
<td>231.65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Transverse</td>
<td>18.16</td>
<td>23.68</td>
<td>32.05</td>
<td>2.85-52.85</td>
<td>294.69</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a N = 35840 for both sections.

From Figure 4.6 and Table 4.1, it is also seen that, as compared to normal bone, OI bone exhibits higher median moduli for the longitudinal and transverse sections at 27.63 and 23.68 GPa, respectively. OI bone also exhibits greater variation of moduli from 18.16 to 37.78 GPa (Q1-Q3) than normal bone. The minimum modulus for OI bone is 2.85 GPa, while the maximum modulus is 294.69 GPa. This maximum modulus of OI bone is much greater than that of normal bone. Therefore, the maximum modulus of OI bone is suspected to be from polishing residues. However, the elastic modulus of one possible polishing residue silicon carbide is 450 GPa, and another possible polishing residue colloidal silica has lower elastic modulus depending on the size (65) than bulk silica, which possesses the elastic modulus of 66.3-74.8 GPa. Therefore, the observed moduli higher than 200 GPa do not originate from the residues from polishing. In addition, after each polishing step, bone specimens were washed using ultrasound. Hence, the moduli over 200 GPa are also suggested to be from bone mineral crystals in OI bone. Overall, the data points above 200 GPa are very rare.

4.3.2. In situ HR-SEM nanoindentation

In order to investigate the nanomechanical properties of bone in the near-surface area, in situ FE-SEM nanoindentation has also been performed on normal and OI bone samples in the
two directions. The representative load displacement curve is shown in Figure 4.7, from which we can see that the loading curve is nonlinear.

![Figure 4.7. Representative load-displacement (L~D) curve for bone sample at peak load of 50µN.](image)

In the transverse plane, in addition to the Haversian canal, bone has other holes like lacunae. With SEM imaging, we can effectively avoid indenting those holes. The resulting elastic modulus and hardness from the transverse sections of normal and OI bones are shown in Table 4.2. Each test was performed horizontally with around 1 µm between neighboring indents. Figure 4.8 shows elastic modulus of normal bone from the vicinity of the Haversian canal toward the interstitial lamellae. Figure 4.8 contains about 8 periodic modulations of properties, and each modulation covers around 5 indents wide (5µm). This is in accordance with the thickness of a lamella which is 3-7µm (66). From Figure 4.8, it is interestingly found that the lowest values in the osteon are located in the vicinity of the Haversian canal, whereas the highest values are also beside the central area and close to the lowest values. Then the values gradually decrease toward the periphery of the osteon. Table 4.2 also show that, for normal bone, the elastic modulus and hardness of interstitial lamellae are 27.92 and 3.29 GPa, respectively; elastic modulus and hardness of osteonal lamellae are 18.5 and 2.86GPa, respectively. The interstitial lamellae have
higher median elastic modulus and hardness than osteonal lamellae. The reason is that the interstitial lamellae are more mature than the osteonal lamellae. For OI bone, this trend is the same: the elastic modulus and hardness of interstitial lamellae are 30.77 and 1.65 GPa, respectively; elastic modulus and hardness of osteonal lamellae are 25.18 and 1.39 GPa, respectively. The interstitial lamellae also have higher median elastic modulus and hardness than osteonal lamellae. We also observe that the OI bone has higher elastic modulus than normal bone. This phenomenon can be attributed to the higher mineral/matrix ratio of OI bone (67). Nevertheless, regardless of greater elastic moduli, median hardness values of OI bone are lower for the transverse sections than the corresponding normal bone. In addition, it is also observed that the range of elastic moduli of OI bone is greater than that of normal bone.

Table 4.2. Elastic moduli and hardness of normal and OI bones for the transverse sections.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bone sample</th>
<th>Elastic moduli(GPa)</th>
<th>Hardness(GPa)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Min</td>
<td>Median</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Normal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Osteonal lamellae</td>
<td>6.78</td>
<td>18.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interstitial lamellae</td>
<td>15.47</td>
<td>27.92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OI</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Osteonal lamellae</td>
<td>6.51</td>
<td>25.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interstitial lamellae</td>
<td>1.13</td>
<td>30.77</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 4.8. Elastic modulus values of human bone in the transverse section.
Table 4.3 shows maximum, minimum, and median values of elastic modulus and hardness of normal and OI bones in the longitudinal section. As seen from the table, for normal bone, the variation of mechanical values with the lower load is greater than that with higher load. This phenomenon has been observed previously in other bio-nanocomposites such as nacre (68). Lower load corresponds to shallow indents reflecting more individual constituent properties rather than bulk properties at deeper indents. As compared to elastic moduli of individual collagen and hydroxyapatite, which is obtained by the modulus mapping technique, the values shown in Table 4.3 are intermediate between the two. At a displacement of around 20 nm at 15 µN loads, all properties detected are from bulk; however, the fraction of the constituents varies greater than that at deeper displacements. For OI bone, the longitudinal section does not have the same trend of a greater elastic modulus at lower load, possibly arising from a more heterogeneous feature of OI bone which makes elastic moduli of the longitudinal section of OI bone more dependent on the indentation site.

Table 4.3. Elastic moduli and hardness of normal and OI bones for the longitudinal sections.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bone Sample</th>
<th>Elastic modulus (GPa)</th>
<th>Hardness (GPa)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Min</td>
<td>Median</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Normal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 µN</td>
<td>10.13</td>
<td>32.87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50 µN</td>
<td>8.00</td>
<td>17.57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100 µN</td>
<td>8.12</td>
<td>10.86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OI</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 µN</td>
<td>2.96</td>
<td>15.86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50 µN</td>
<td>2.57</td>
<td>15.87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100 µN</td>
<td>11.55</td>
<td>27.92</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4.4. Discussion

At the nanometer scale, bone is composed of mineralized collagen fibrils which consist of three tiered triple-helical collagen molecules and mineral particles. They are arranged in a staggered pattern as shown in Figure 4.9 and Figure 4.10. The diameter of a collagen molecule is approximately 1.23 nm, and the length is about 300 nm (46). The diameter of collagen fibers are 50-70 nm, and collagen fiber bundles are 150-250 nm (69). The typical size of a bone mineral crystal is about 50*25*3 nm (69). This size is determined from TEM imaging experiments (70). The size of the bright plates or dots shown in Figure 4.4c are on the same length scale as this size. Therefore, it is reasonable to suggest that these bright plates or dots are bone mineral crystals or mineral crystal aggregates. Since the displacement in modulus mapping is only 2-3 nm, the material under the tip is probed within the elastic region. Due to this small scale, the properties of pure collagen molecules and mineral crystal are possibly detected with this technique. However, according to the modulus maps, very few points have values exceeding 100 GPa. This indicates that, although there is a large amount of mineral in bone (e.g., in bone, the mineral component accounts for nearly 2/3 of the dry weight and about half volume of bone matrix (71); 70-75% of the mineral might be extafibrillar (72)), in these two directions pure mineral is hardly detected. This phenomenon may arise from the following reasons: (1) Intrafibrillar mineral crystal is aligned as shown in Figure 3.9. From both longitudinal and transverse surfaces only the edge of mineral crystal appears, which is about 3nm thick and hardly detected with the indenter with the radius of hundreds of nanometer; however, since the mineralized collagen fibrils are not accurately aligned along the c-axis of bone, some of the mineral crystals are still seen. Sasaki et al. (73) proposed a model for the arrangement of extrafibrillar mineral as a crust around collagen fibrils based on AFM study. The crust was said
to be usually divided into a few pieces by intercalation of collagen microfibrils. The 
extrafibrillar mineral volume is also found to be at least 60% of the total and cemented together 
by noncollagenous organic matter (73, 74). In addition, bone mineral is nonstoichiometric 
overall, and the mineral crystals are found to contain significant and varying amounts of CO$_3^{2-}$ 
and HPO$_4^{2-}$ ions (75). There is a substantial fraction of the protonated phosphates (HPO$_4^{2-}$) 
situated on the surfaces of the bone mineral crystals and the concentration of unprotonated 
phosphates (PO$_4^{3-}$) within the apatitic lattice increases toward the center of the crystal as shown 
by $^{31}$P-NMR spin-spin relaxation studies (76). Therefore, because of the significant difference of 
the moduli between collagen fibrils and mineral crystals, the modulus maps can reveal the 
arrangement of near-pure organic matrix (collagen or non-collagenous proteins), mineralized 
collagen fiber bundles which combines collagen fibrils with intrafibrillar mineral, and mineral 
crystals with nonstoichiometric parts. Figure 4.4a, 4c, 5a, and Figure 5d, clearly display these 
arrangements.

Figure 4.9. Schematic illustration of the mineralized collagen fibril (not drawn to scale). Plate-
like mineral crystals are sandwiched between layers of collagen molecules. P, T, L refer to the 
periosteal, transverse and longitudinal planes, respectively, perpendicular to the corresponding 
arrows. Transverse plane is normal to the bone long axis and periosteal plane is parallel to the 
natural outer surface of the bone (adapted from (77)).
Figure 4.4 and Figure 4.5 display the same trends of normal and OI bones: (1) the great variation of modulus, which originates from the different composition and their arrangement of bone at different sites; (2) the median modulus of the longitudinal sections are greater than the transverse sections. The differences between normal and OI bones include: (1) normal bone appears more compact than OI bone since OI bone modulus map consists of black lines indicating low moduli as displayed in Figure 4.5d; (2) the diameter of a collagen fiber in normal (122.42 nm) is greater than that in OI bone (78.75 nm), but the size of the collagen fiber bundles are similar in these two bones (140-167 nm in normal bone and around 176nm in OI bone); (3) OI mineral crystals are smaller than normal mineral crystals, and OI mineral crystal is less heterogeneous. This conclusion is in accordance with another study which shows reduced heterogeneity of bone mineral in OI-I patients (42). In our previous work (Chapter 3), XRD data of mineral crystal of normal and OI bones are observed to be not significantly different. However, in this work, the plates or dots in modulus maps reflect varying mechanical properties. Therefore, the OI bone mineral crystal may contain some mineral with low nanomechanical
properties outside of the surface; (4) OI bone has higher median elastic modulus than normal bone, probably due to higher mineral/matrix ratio (35, 39, 40) and higher elastic modulus of mineral crystal of OI bone as seen in Figure 4.5.

In the modulus mapping experiments, as mentioned earlier, the median elastic moduli of the longitudinal sections are greater than those of the transverse sections for both normal and OI bones. However, in the in situ FE-SEM nanoindentation experiments, when applying the same load as 50μN, the elastic moduli of the longitudinal sections are smaller than either those of osteonal lamellae or interstitial lamellae for normal and OI bones. The latter result is quite reasonable since much of the nanoindentation and microindentation studies in literature indicate that bone has generally a higher elastic modulus in its longitudinal compared to its transverse direction (6, 77-80). As shown in Figure 4.9, in both directions, the indenter encounters the mineral crystal layers edge-on, but because the Young’s modulus of unmineralized collagen fibrils is 1.43 times greater than that perpendicular to the fibril axes (81), the elastic modulus of bone in the longitudinal direction is generally greater than that in the transverse direction, as explained in the literature (77). In the modulus mapping experiments, the result is the opposite possibly because at the modulus mapping scale which only probes 2-3 nm depth, the composition of collagen and mineral as well as their interactions should be taken into account. In our previous work (82), we have discussed that the longitudinal section surface contains extensive interactions between collagen molecules and mineral surface while the transverse section surface contains extensive interactions between collagen termini and mineral surface (Figure 3.10). Since collagen molecules are comprised of about 68% uncharged amino acid, and collagen termini are both charged groups which possess stronger interactions with exchangeable ions contained within mineral surface, the mineral in the longitudinal section surface appears to
be more stoichiometric than that in the transverse section surface, as suggested by FTIR spectra. Therefore, the elastic modulus of the longitudinal section surface might also be greater than that of the transverse section surface. In a previous modeling study, the collagen pulled parallel to the mineral (100) surface (periosteal plane) is found to have a higher elastic modulus than that when the collagen pulled perpendicular to (001) mineral surface (transverse plane) in the proximity of mineral (49). This is different from the results on microindentation on bone (77), indicating that, at nanoscale, the interaction between collagen and mineral plays a more important role than at larger scales. Another modeling study (83) also reflects this scale issue by suggesting that: the nonbonded interactions have a far more important role than hydrogen bonds in the mechanics of full-length collagen; however, for short-length collagen models, interchain hydrogen bonds dominate the conformation.

A periodicity of about 5μm in accordance with the width of lamella is seen in Figure3.7. This periodic modulation was also found in the literature (84) and was understood to arise from a variable fiber orientation and mineral content which helps prevent incipient microcracks in osteons from developing into catastrophic failures. Interstitial lamellae is made of the remnants of the remolded old osteons or primary bone tissue, so in general, osteons are less mineralized and less stiff than interstitial lamellae. Therefore, the elastic modulus of interstitial lamellae is significantly greater than that of osteonal lamellae (5, 6). Our results agree with this phenomenon. There are different mechanical trends when increasing the distance from the center of osteon toward the periphery. A decreasing trend was obtained from osteons in human femur samples (5). Meanwhile, decreasing osteonal mineralization was observed with distance from the central Haversian canal from microradiographic imaging (85) and backscattered electron imaging (86). Though the work from Gupta’s group did not show significant variation between
osteonal lamellae, from the diagrams shown in the paper (84), it can be observed that the largest indentation modulus is at the location near the Haversian canal, just as seen in Figure 4.8. This highly mineralized inner ring (also called a calcification “halo”) adjacent to the Haversian canal present in old completed osteons was reported as having high mineral density (87) and great hardness (88) since it contains more amorphous calcium phosphate. On the other hand, the opposite trend was observed with FTIRM from human iliac crest biopsies (89, 90) and with Raman from baboon femur samples (91). Both of the spectra showed an increase in the mineral:organic ratio with increasing distance from the Haversian canal. Increasing elastic modulus with distance from the osteonal center toward the periphery was also found as probed by nanoindentation (91). Therefore, further study is needed to clarify the debate.

The comparison of nanomechanical properties between OI and normal bones is mixed for the longitudinal sections (Table 4.3) because of more site-specific feature of OI bone. In contrast, the comparison of the nanomechanical properties of the normal and OI cortical bones for the transverse sections have more applicable indications, because nanoindentation force applied on the transverse section is parallel to the long axis of bone (see Figure 4.1), which is the direction of physiological loading. Table 4.2 shows that the median elastic moduli of OI bone are higher than those of normal bone, however, the trend for median hardness values is the opposite. Elastic modulus is an intrinsic material property and fundamentally related to atomic bonding. Hardness is the resistance of a material to deformation due to a constant compression load, and also is a good indication of the underlying microstructure. Elastic modulus is generally considered to be related to hardness from statistical trend, but there are exceptions depending on the microstructure (92). The lower hardness values explain the fragility of OI bone despite its higher
elastic modulus, which also reflects the influence of the porous microstructure and altered molecular structure on the mechanical properties of materials.

Modulus mapping technique provides the capability to quantitatively map both the contact stiffness and elastic modulus of a material surface with nanometer resolution. Unlike the bone specimens embedded in resins, the undisturbed bone specimens still possess many holes such as canals, lacunae, and canaliculi. Therefore, the maps with these holes are excluded from the results. In situ SEM nanoindentation has the advantage of high resolution images and precise positioning of the indenter compared to the traditional triboscope instrument, especially for metals and semiconductors; however, bone specimens, without gold or carbon covering, which can affect mechanical tests, don’t produce high-resolution images. In addition, the nanoindentation accessory needs to be tilted to a specified degree so that the sample can be detected by SEM; the tilt degree is too small for the specimens to be detected by Energy Dispersive X-ray Spectral (EDS or EDX) detector which is commonly used for elemental analysis. Future instrumentation models are expected to overcome these limitations.

4.5. Conclusion

Modulus mapping and in situ FE-SEM nanoindentation were both performed for the first time on “undisturbed” human normal and OI cortical bones. Modulus mapping, which is able to map the surface elastic moduli of materials, reveals elastic moduli of near-pure hydroxyapatite and collagen, and the distribution of mineralized fibrils and extrafibrillar minerals. In situ FE-SEM nanoindentation, on the other hand, reveals the bulk properties of bone. With this technique, the elastic modulus of interstitial lamellae and osteonal lamellae were compared; the largest indentation modulus was also observed at the location near the Haversian canal which is
due to the highly mineralized inner ring adjacent to the Haversian canal present in older osteons. Both techniques demonstrate that nanomechanical properties of bone specimens are structure specific due to the periodic modulations for mineralized fibers and lamellae.

The comparison of the results from these two techniques showed the opposite trends about the median elastic modulus of transverse and longitudinal sections. This indicates that at the shallow depth of about 2-3nm, the interactions between collagen and mineral should be taken into account, whereas at the deeper depths, the orientation and arrangement of mineral and collagen play more important roles. Therefore, the nanomechanical behaviors should be analyzed with the knowledge of the structure of bone at nanoscale as well as the interactions between different constituents of bone. Normal and OI bones are also compared by these two techniques and smaller collagen fiber bundles, smaller and less heterogeneous mineral crystals, greater median and maximum elastic modulus of OI bone are found. The transverse section of OI bone shows greater elastic moduli for both interstitial and osteonal lamellae, but lower hardness than that of normal bone.

4.6. References


85. Sissons HA, Jowsey J, Stewart L, editors. The microradiographic appearance of normal bone tissue at various ages. X-ray Microscopy and X-ray Microanalysis, Proceedings of the


CHAPTER 5. DYNAMIC NANOMECHANICAL BEHAVIOR OF HEALTHY AND OI HUMAN CORTICAL BONES


5.1. Introduction

A wide range of materials show some combination of linearly elastic and viscous behavior, such as linear polymer, rubber, pliable biomaterials and bone. Bone tissue is composed of hydroxyapatite (HAP) mineral, organic collagen, water, as well as a small amount of noncollageneous proteins (1). Due to its complex composition, as well as hierarchical structure, bone tissue exhibits viscoelastic behavior such as creep deformation and stress-relaxation, especially when it is in a hydrated state (2-5). Because the organic collagen is primarily the type I collagen, which is a long-chain triple helix, collagen has been shown to cause creep deformation (6) or stress relaxation process (7) of bone. The cross-links between collagen molecules also affect the creep behavior of tendon (8). However, results also show that collagen does not significantly affect the viscoelasticity of bone (9); instead, moisture content has a significant effect on this property (10). HAP has also been reported to affect the viscoelasticity,

---

3 This chapter was co-authored by Chunju Gu, Kalpana Katti, and Dinesh Katti. Chunju Gu had primary responsibility for preparing samples, conducting all tests, and drafting this chapter. Kalpana Katti and Dinesh Katti directed the research orientation and revised this chapter.
which may be due to the energy dissipation influenced by the interaction between the mineral and collagen (11), or by dislocations in the HAP mineral itself (12). Viscoelastic behavior has been attributed to trapped water in mineral platelets in other natural biocomposites such as nacre from sea shells (13, 14). At the microscopic scale, many interfaces such as cement lines and the boundaries between the lamellae within osteons also contribute to viscoelasticity (15, 16).

In addition to the contribution from the above mentioned components to the viscoelastic property, the role of orientation is also noteworthy. Bone has long been recognized as an orthotropic material, since it has a roughly parallel alignment of the primary components to the long axis of bone. The orientation of HAP has been reported to cause the anisotropic viscoelasticity of bone (17). Macroscale tension tests of bovine cortical bone showed that the energy loss was noticeably larger for specimens in the longitudinal direction than in transverse direction (18).

There are several methods for measuring viscoelasticity of bone. Firstly, creep deformation is usually measured by detecting the change of strain when applying a constant stress, whereas stress-relaxation is measured by detecting the change of stress maintaining a constant strain. At the macroscopic scale, the response of bone to stress was examined with a biaxial, driven torsion pendulum system (4), three-point bending combined with force sensor (17), or compressive loading to allow creep strains (19). Secondly, dynamic mechanical analysis (DMA) technique, which is widely used for characterization of polymeric materials, was used to characterize bone by several researchers (9-11, 18, 20, 21). In DMA, a sinusoidal force (stress $\sigma$) is applied to a material and the resulting displacement (strain $\varepsilon$) is measured. The measured strain lags behind the applied stress by a phase difference for viscoelastic materials. Storage modulus ($E'$), loss modulus ($E''$) as well as mechanical damping factor are thus acquired. Thirdly, at the
microscopic scale, quasi-static nanoindentation has been developed to study the creep behavior of bone by fitting the depth vs. time data at constant load to rheological models in recent years (22-26). Lastly, based on the principle of traditional DMA and the development of nanoindentation, nanoDMA technique has emerged for conducting the microscopic scale dynamic nanoindentation tests (27). Some researchers have considered the tan δ values versus frequency for bone tissue (5, 28, 29). Other researchers have also used nanoDMA to investigate the dynamic properties of different dehydrated bone specimens without considering the change of frequency (23, 26).

The studies on viscoelastic properties of bone at nanoscale are few, and studies on dynamic mechanical behavior are even less understood. Almost all of the bone specimens studied are either wet or dry. The wet specimens are kept in saline solution before testing or immersed in phosphate buffered saline (PBS) in a fluid cell during test duration; at shallow indentation depth, the indenter tip oscillation is not avoided during wet sample testing. In addition, the dry specimens are usually dehydrated and embedded, which affect the interactions and mechanical properties of bone (30, 31). Therefore, we attempt to study the bone specimens in their intact state without any treatment other than polishing the surface and conduct dynamic indentation tests under inert helium environment to reduce bacterial growth on the bone specimens. In our previous modeling work, we have demonstrated that the mechanical behavior of collagen is significantly influenced by collagen-mineral interaction as well as collagen-water-mineral interactions (32, 33). The mechanical behavior of collagen is direction-dependent and also influenced by strain rate (34). Therefore, in the current study, we evaluate the anisotropic viscoelasticity of intact human cortical bone at nanoscale and the influence of different components of bone on this property. In order to obtain a better understanding of the viscoelastic
behavior, demineralized bone specimens and osteogenesis imperfecta (OI) bone specimens were also selected for dynamic nanoindentation tests. Bone samples with OI are typically brittle and this disease is associated with collagen abnormality (35). In OI bone, the collagen molecules are often altered due to gene defects. These gene defects may affect the primary structure of a procollagen by preventing the zipper-like folding of the triple helix and causing degradation of normal and abnormal proα chains through procollagen suicide, or producing a kink in the triple helix and causing assembly of abnormally branched or dendritic collagen fibrils (36).

5.2. Materials and Methods

5.2.1. Materials

A healthy human femur (No apparent metabolic bone disease record, 22 years old, female) and a human OI tibia (No apparent metabolic bone disease record, 27 years old, female, OI type was not identified; yet suspected to be type I since she had height of 67 inches, and weight of 180lb with pregnancy experience) were obtained (Figure 5.1) from National Disease Research Interchange, PA and stored in a freezer at -70°C. Bone specimens were cut from the mid-diaphysis of these two samples. A low-speed diamond saw was used for the initial rough cut and then a low-speed diamond-wafering blade (Buehler, Isomet, Lake Bluff, IL) was used to trim the sample down and subsequently the pieces were stored in a freezer at -70°C. Anterior sections were selected as the specimens from both femur and tibia. The specimens were about 1 mm thick in both transverse and longitudinal directions (Figure 5.2). Marrow and flesh were removed by scraping with a ceramic knife and then the bone samples was washed with deionized (DI) water at room temperature in approximately 10 minutes since longer time may begin to influence material behavior.
In order to perform the dynamic indentation tests, the specimens were polished with silicon carbide paper (Buehler, 600, 800 and 1200 grit), further polished using a series of diamond compound pastes (Buehler, 3µm, 1µm, 0.25µm) on a cloth and finished by polishing with a 0.02µm non-crystallizing colloidal silica polishing suspension. After each polishing step,
the specimens were ultrasonically cleaned in DI water for 30 seconds (the total rinsing time was limited about 3.5 minutes to avoid demineralization (37)).

After following the polishing steps and ultrasonically cleaning in DI water, one set of transverse sections of the normal bone were demineralized in 10% ethylenediamine tetraacetate (EDTA) (pH 7.5) for 5 minutes, 4, 24, and 72 hours at room temperature, washed exhaustively with DI water to remove all traces of EDTA. The same procedure was applied to another set of the longitudinal sections, but only demineralized for 5 minutes and 4 hours. The specimens demineralized for 5 minutes are denoted as Demi-5m, while the specimens demineralized for 4 hours are denoted as Demi-4h.

5.2.2. FTIR and AFM characterizations

Photoacoustic-Fourier transform infrared spectroscopy (PA-FTIR) experiments were performed on these demineralized bone specimens using Thermo Electron, Nexus 870 spectrometer equipped with MTEC Model 300 photoacoustic accessory. All spectra were collected in the range of 4000–400 cm⁻¹ at a spectral resolution of 4 cm⁻¹. Root mean squared (RMS) roughness Rq of the normal and demineralized bone specimens was measured over the area of 1mm*1mm using Atomic Force Microscope (AFM, Veeco Metrology Group, Santa Barbara, CA), which is equipped with a Nanoscope IIIa controller and J-type piezo scanner. The mathematical definition of Rq are as follows

\[ R_q = \sqrt{\frac{1}{l} \int_0^l (y(x))^2 \, dx} \]  

(5.1)

The RMS mean line is the line that divides the profile so that the sum of the squares of the derivations of the profile height from it is equal to zero.
5.2.3. Dynamic nanoindentation tests

Dynamic nanoindentation tests were conducted on the polished bone specimens (intact and demineralized for 5 minutes and 4 hours) using nanoDMA® (Dynamic Mechanical Analysis) software in the Hysitron Triboscope nanomechanical instrument (Minneapolis, MN), equipped with a Nanoscope IIIa controller (Veeco Metrology, Santa Barbara, CA). The load and displacement resolutions of the instrument are 1 nN and less than 1 nm, respectively. A Berkovich (three sided pyramid, 100–200 nm tip radius) diamond indenter tip was used to perform the tests. During the performance of experiments, dry helium was kept flowing into the experimental chamber to prevent bacterial growth (38). Variable dynamic load tests were performed, in which the load and the load-amplitude were changed while a constant frequency was maintained. The static load was varied from 200 μN to a maximum of 1000 μN in 9 segment steps. The starting dynamic load was set at 20 μN. Tests were performed at three different frequencies, i.e. 25, 50, and 100 Hz, with 15 indents in each test. A schematic representation of the load function showing variation of load over time is shown in Figure 5.3. During the tests, the loss modulus \( E' \), storage modulus \( E'' \), and the \( \tan \delta \) (\( \tan \delta \)) were calculated by measuring the load amplitude, displacement amplitude, and the phase lag (\( \delta \)). The dynamic model of indenter system in the instrument in contact with specimens was described in detail in literature (27, 39).

Assuming linear viscoelasticity, dynamic mechanical behavior of the material can be obtained using the following equations:

\[
E' = \frac{k_s \sqrt{\pi}}{2 \sqrt{A_c}}
\]  

(5.2)
where $k_s$, $C_s$ denote the sample stiffness and damping coefficients, respectively, $\omega$ denotes the frequency of the applied force, and $A_c$ is the projected contact area of the indent on the surface of the sample. Storage modulus measures the stored energy, representing the elastic portion, whereas the loss modulus measures the energy dissipated as heat, representing the viscous portion; and the $\tan \delta$, which describes the relative amount of energies stored/returned and lost by a specimen during mechanical deformation, has been considered as a measure of the degree of viscoelasticity of a material (5, 9, 40).

Figure 5.3. Schematic plot of load versus time for a variable dynamic load test.

5.3. Results and Discussion

5.3.1. Dynamic nanomechanical behaviour of intact normal human cortical bone

Figure 5.4(a) and (b) show the mean $\tan \delta$ with 95% confidence intervals for the intact bone specimens with variable static force (200-1000µN) at 25, 50 and 100Hz. As seen from
these figures, the tan δ decreases with the increase of frequency for both longitudinal and transverse sections. This decrease of tan δ is associated with the decrease of the internal friction, which can result from stiffening of the molecular configuration with increased frequency. Figure 5.4 (a) and (b) also show that the mean tan δ and 95% confidence intervals of the transverse section are both greater than those of the longitudinal section for all three frequencies. It is observed that the mean tan δ values are lower than 0.04 which indicates that the bone specimens exhibit low viscoelasticity. Figure 5.5 (a) and (b) show representative E’, E”’, and tan δ values of the normal human bone during one dynamic nanoindentation with a maximum displacement of 246 nm. It is evident that, during this dynamic nanoindentation, E’ is almost constant. However, both tan δ and E” vary significantly and are correlated.

Figure 5.4. The mean loss tangent with 95% confidence intervals of normal bone specimens with variable static force (a) Longitudinal section; (b) Transverse section.
5.3.2. Demineralization of normal human cortical bone

In order to better understand the dynamic nanoindentation results of bone, the transverse sections of the normal bone were demineralized to varying degrees with the demineralization times of 5 minutes, and 4, 8, 24, and 72 hours. The infrared spectra of demineralized transverse sections are shown in Figure 5.6a. It is seen that, after demineralization for 4 hours, the spectra appear to not vary much with additional time. The shape and position of the range of 1000-1300 cm\(^{-1}\) are also very similar as the spectra from pure type I collagen (41), which means that, after 4 hours of demineralization, the surfaces of the samples have been totally demineralized with the depth of about 30μm (calculated from the equation 2.2 in Chapter 2 (42)). When the sample is
demineralized after 5 minutes (Demi-5m), as shown in Figure 5.6a, the v1 and v3 PO$_4^{3-}$ bands (900-1180 cm$^{-1}$), v2CO$_3^{2-}$ (at 874 cm$^{-1}$), and v2 PO$_4^{3-}$ bands (at 564-603 cm$^{-1}$) all remain in the same positions as those of intact bone specimen; however, their intensities decrease. Therefore, after 5 minutes, demineralization on the surface of the specimens has already occurred but still has not completed within the depth of about 30μm (the depth that infrared beam can penetrate). Since, after 4 hours (Demi-4h), the surface has been totally demineralized, the longitudinal sections were demineralized for 5 minutes and 4 hours to compare the dynamic nanomechanical properties. Figure 5. 6b shows the spectra from intact or demineralized specimens for 5 minutes and 4 hours in both transverse and longitudinal planes. The intact transverse and longitudinal sections have different v1 and v3 PO$_4^{3-}$-bands (900-1180 cm$^{-1}$) as also described in detail earlier (43); However, after demineralization, the PO$_4^{3-}$ bands are almost the same in the two directions. Therefore, demineralization appears to damage the orientation of the mineral crystals. From Figure 5. 6b, it is also observed that all bands from the organic phase (C-H stretching, amide I, II, and III) remain in their positions regardless of the demineralization treatment. Therefore, it seems reasonable to assume that demineralization has a negligible effect on the collagen molecular structure and the three-dimensional network of the collagen fibers, as described in the literature (11).
Figure 5.6. Photoacoustic infrared spectra of undisturbed and demineralized human bone in the energy range of 4000-400cm$^{-1}$ (a) Transverse section, time of demineralization: 5 minutes, 4, 8, 24, and 72 hours; (b) Transverse and longitudinal sections, time of demineralization: 5 minutes, and 4 hours.
5.3.3. Dynamic nanomechanical behaviour of demineralized normal human cortical bone

Roughness of the bone specimens of intact and demineralized bone samples are listed in Table 5.1, as assessed with AFM analysis of several 1 µm×1 µm regions. It is seen from Table 5.1 that the demineralized samples are much rougher than the intact samples. The viscoelastic response of the transverse and longitudinal sections after demineralization for 5 minutes and 4 hours are compared (Figure 5.7 (a-d)). The tan δ, E’, and maximum contact depths for intact and demineralized (5 minutes and 4 hour) samples are listed in Table 5.2. From Figure 5.7 (a-d) and Table 5.2, it is seen that for both longitudinal and transverse sections, tan δ values of the Demi-4h specimens increase as compared with the intact bone specimens. In addition, this increase is exceptionally significant for the transverse section, whereas the increase is marginal for the longitudinal section. It is known that the collagen molecules are aligned roughly parallel to the c-axis of bone. After demineralization for 4 hours, only collagen molecules are left on the surface of these bone specimens (<30µm). Therefore, this difference of tan δ between the longitudinal section and transverse section of Demi-4h reflects the viscoelastic response in the two directions of collagen molecules. In other words, along the long axis, the viscoelastic response of collagen molecules is greater than perpendicular to the c-axis of bone.

Table 5.1. Roughness Rq of the bone specimens of intact and demineralized bone samples (average ±STDEV).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sample</th>
<th>Longitudinal section</th>
<th>Transverse section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Intact</td>
<td>Demi. 5 minutes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roughness (nm)</td>
<td>18.52 ± 5.52</td>
<td>34.84 ± 7.28</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Figure 5.7. The mean loss tangent with 95% confidence intervals of demineralized normal bone specimens with variable static force (a) Longitudinal section, demineralized for 5 minutes; (b) Longitudinal section, demineralized for 4 hours; (c) Transverse section, demineralized for 5 minutes; (d) Transverse section, demineralized for 4 hours.
Figure 5.7. The mean loss tangent with 95% confidence intervals of demineralized normal bone specimens with variable static force (continued) (a) Longitudinal section, demineralized for 5 minutes; (b) Longitudinal section, demineralized for 4 hours; (c) Transverse section, demineralized for 5 minutes; (d) Transverse section, demineralized for 4 hours.

From Figure 5.7 (a-d) and Table 5.2, it is also seen that most \( \tan \delta \) values of Demi-5m bone specimens increase as compared to the intact bone specimens for both longitudinal and transverse sections. However, some of the \( \tan \delta \) values of Demi-5m bone specimens are greater than the values of corresponding Demi-4h specimen. This phenomenon indicates that the surface properties of the Demi-5m specimens vary from site to site because of incomplete demineralization, which results in a combination of mineral and collagen proteins on the sample surface. Table 5.2 also shows that the \( \tan \delta \) values of the transverse section of Demi-4h specimen are greater than corresponding \( \tan \delta \) values of the longitudinal sections. In addition, the \( \tan \delta \) values decrease with an increase of frequency for both longitudinal and transverse sections of Demi-4h specimens. These two trends for Demi-4h specimens as shown in Table 5.2 are the same as the intact bone specimens. However, the Demi-5m specimens do not exhibit these trends, indicating that these bone specimens have more heterogeneous state and properties. Table 5.2
shows the trend of $E'$ after demineralization; $E'$ decreases with the extent of demineralization as expected. Maximum displacement of bone specimens at frequencies of 25, 50 and 100Hz increases with the extent of demineralization, as listed in Table 5.2.

Table 5.2. Tan $\delta$, $E'$, and maximum displacement values of intact and demineralized normal bone specimens at frequencies of 25, 50 and 100Hz (average ±STDEV).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Specimen</th>
<th>Longitudinal section</th>
<th>Transverse section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>25Hz</td>
<td>50Hz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tan $\delta$</td>
<td>Intact</td>
<td>0.030±</td>
<td>0.015±</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.014</td>
<td>0.006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Demi. 5min.</td>
<td>0.038±</td>
<td>0.032±</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.026</td>
<td>0.025</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Demi. 4hrs</td>
<td>0.043±</td>
<td>0.023±</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.011</td>
<td>0.015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E' (GPa)</td>
<td>Intact</td>
<td>20.20±</td>
<td>19.63±</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3.76</td>
<td>4.42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Demi. 5min.</td>
<td>8.00±</td>
<td>11.37±</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2.48</td>
<td>4.34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Demi. 4hrs</td>
<td>3.70±</td>
<td>5.94±</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.04</td>
<td>2.73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max. displacement</td>
<td>Intact</td>
<td>247.36±</td>
<td>246.89±</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(nm)</td>
<td></td>
<td>32.38</td>
<td>39.92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Demi. 5min.</td>
<td>409.57±</td>
<td>332.93±</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>87.99</td>
<td>72.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Demi. 4hrs</td>
<td>639.71±</td>
<td>558.25±</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>156.67</td>
<td>361.76</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.3.4. **Dynamic nanomechanical behaviour of OI human cortical bone**

The mean tan δ values with 95% confidence intervals of OI human bone specimens at variable static force are displayed in Figure 5.8 (a) and (b). The comparison of tan δ, E’, and maximum contact depths for normal and OI human cortical bone specimens are listed in Table 5.3. As shown in the table and figures, the same trends of tan δ for OI bone as intact and Demi-4h normal bone specimens are observed: (1) tan δ decreases with the increase of frequency; and (2) tan δ of the transverse section is generally greater than that of the longitudinal section. As compared to the normal bone at different frequencies, OI bone has less tan δ in most cases, indicating that viscoelastic response of OI bone is less than the normal bone. Table 5.3 shows that the average E’ values of OI bone specimens are greater than those of normal bone. This is reasonable because OI bone has higher mineral/matrix ratio(44). It is also noticed that the maximum contact depth of OI bone specimens at each frequency is lower than that of normal bone. However, the overall difference of dynamic nanomechanical behavior between OI bone and intact normal bone is small.
Figure 5.8. The mean loss tangent with 95% confidence intervals of OI bone specimens with variable static force (a) Longitudinal section (b) Transverse section.
Table 5.3. Tan δ, E’, and maximum displacement values of normal and OI bone specimens at frequencies of 25, 50 and 100Hz (average ±STDEV).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Specimen</th>
<th>Longitudinal section</th>
<th>Transverse section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>25Hz</td>
<td>50Hz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tan δ</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>0.030</td>
<td>0.015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>±0.014</td>
<td>±0.006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>OI</td>
<td>0.024</td>
<td>0.019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>±0.011</td>
<td>±0.008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E’ (GPa)</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>20.20</td>
<td>19.63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>±3.76</td>
<td>±4.42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>OI</td>
<td>23.21</td>
<td>22.56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>±2.20</td>
<td>±3.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max. displacement</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>247.36</td>
<td>246.89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>±32.38</td>
<td>±39.92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>OI</td>
<td>211.76</td>
<td>218.87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>±13.88</td>
<td>±20.55</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.3.5. Effects of frequency, orientation and composition on viscoelasticity of bone

Among other reasons, dynamic viscoelasticity arises due to molecular motions between collagen and also collagen-mineral structures. Collagen is highly constrained by crosslinks and close apposition with mineral crystallites; therefore, the molecular mobility of collagen is expected to result in a broad distribution of tan δ (45). In the Section 5.3.1, 5.3.3, and 5.3.4, we compared this viscoelastic behavior of bone specimens from three aspects: (1) tan δ changes with frequencies; (2) differences between the longitudinal sections and the transverse sections; and (3) different composition (e.g. intact, demineralized and abnormal OI bone specimens) leading to different viscoelastic behaviors.
In the literature, the examination of the tan δ versus frequencies reveal that dehydrated human cancellous bone, saline solution soaked bovine bone, trabecular human bone, and hydrated mouse bone all have the same trend as discovered in the study: the tan δ decreases with frequency (5, 18, 28, 29). This phenomenon is different in nacre from seashells, where we’ve seen tan δ values positively correlated with frequencies (14). The relationship between tan δ values and frequencies of viscoelastic materials are strongly related to their composition, internal structure and environmental condition. The specimens used in this study are in the same environmental conditions, therefore, the differences in viscoelastic behaviors are due to their composition (e.g. intact, demineralized and abnormal OI bone specimens) and internal structure.

By comparing the transverse sections with the longitudinal sections, it is found that the intact normal bone and OI bone have the same trend: the transverse sections have slightly higher tan δ values than the longitudinal sections at almost all frequencies. In this work, the transverse section of bone is subjected to a vertical force while the longitudinal section is subjected to a perpendicular force as shown in Figure 5.2. The nanoindentation force for the transverse sections is along the long axis of bone, and therefore the indenter can penetrate in the long axis into collagen molecules which have the length of about 300 nm. However, after it is demineralized for 4 hours, when there is no mineral left within the indentation displacement, there is a significant difference between the transverse and longitudinal sections. The tan δ values of transverse sections are markedly greater than the longitudinal sections. Therefore, (1) the anisotropic feature of collagen molecules is greater than bone, and (2) the viscoelastic response of collagen molecules is larger parallel to the long axis than perpendicular to the long axis of bone. It is also interesting to observe that after demineralization for 5 minutes, the tan δ values of the transverse section are slightly smaller than those of the longitudinal sections at all
frequencies. This difference between Demi-5m and both the intact and Demi-4h specimens is attributable to the alteration of mineral because collagen molecules are regarded as intact in these specimens.

The comparison of dynamic nanomechanical properties of intact normal and OI bone specimens further accentuates the role of mineral to the viscoelasticity of bone. Although there is significant molecular defects in collagen molecules, the mineral crystal structure of OI bone is similar to that of normal bone and the dynamic nanomechanical behavior of OI bone is also similar to the intact normal bone. Therefore, the viscoelasticity of intact bone is primarily attributed to the mineral, although the collagen phase affects the viscoelasticity to some extent. This statement is in a good agreement with the study of Wang et al. (11). Differently, in the present study, the displacement in mechanical tests is hundreds of nanometer. The underlying mechanism is still required to be further explored.

5.4. Conclusion

Time-dependent characteristics of viscoelastic materials are strongly related to their composition, internal structure, and environmental condition. In this work, dynamic nanomechanical properties of normal human cortical bone (intact, demineralized) and OI human cortical bone were investigated using a nanoindentation instrument under the same environmental condition. Variable dynamic load tests showed that intact bone has low viscoelasticity. The viscoelastic response of all bone specimens (intact, demineralized, and OI) decreases with frequency, possibly arising from the stiffening of the molecular configuration when frequency increases. With demineralization, viscoelastic response of bone increases, so does the maximum displacement. Almost all transverse sections of intact normal and OI bone
specimens possess slightly higher viscoelastic response than the longitudinal sections except demineralized specimens. The transverse section of Demi-4h (totally demineralized) exhibits significantly greater viscoelastic response than the corresponding longitudinal section, indicating that the anisotropic feature of collagen molecules is greater than bone and the viscoelastic response of collagen molecules is greater along the long axis than perpendicular to the long axis of bone. On the contrary, the transverse section of Demi-5m (partially demineralized) exhibits lower viscoelastic response than the corresponding longitudinal section. This phenomenon is attributed to the alteration of the mineral phase. OI bone has slightly greater E’ than normal bone due to its higher mineral/matrix ratio. Viscoelastic response of OI bone is slightly less than that of normal bone. Despite the significant altered collagen molecules, the overall similar dynamic nanomechanical behaviors of OI bone and normal bone indicates that the viscoelasticity of intact bone is mostly determined by the mineral. The collagen phase also contributes to the viscoelasticity to some extent.

5.5. Acknowledgement

I would like to acknowledge grants from National Science Foundation MRI grants for enabling experiments conducted in this work. I would also like to acknowledge financial support from ND EPSCoR and the support from Doctoral Dissertation Award of NDSU graduate school.

5.6. References


CHAPTER 6. ANISOTROPIC PROPERTIES OF HUMAN CORTICAL BONE WITH OSTEOGENESIS IMPERFECTA

This chapter presents SEM images, FTIR studies of four sections (anterior, medial, posterior, and lateral) of OI human cortical bone and nanomechanical properties of anterior and posterior sections obtained using in situ FE-SEM nanoindentation technique.

6.1. Introduction

The heterogeneity of long bone (femur and tibia) diaphyseal shape and size variation are modulated by genetic, mechanical, nutritional, and hormonal patterning throughout its lifetime (1). According to Wolff’s law, bone adapts itself to be stronger in positions subjected to higher loads (2). Non-uniform loading applied to different anatomical positions affect the formation of its microstructures, leading to various load-carrying capacities. A study of archaeological samples using high-resolution X-ray computed tomography reveals that the femoral and tibial midshaft shapes are relatively conserved throughout lifetime; yet, conversely, the proximal and distal femoral diaphysis and proximal tibial diaphysis appear more sensitive to developmentally induced changes in mechanical loading with high cross-sectional shape variability proximally and less change distally for tibia (3). The study also claims that the relative conservation of midshaft cortical geometry throughout development is due to the low strain that midshaft bears (3). The typical cross-sectional shape of tibia is divided into four areas: anterior, medial, posterior, and lateral sections (Figure 6.1). The cross-sectional shapes of the femoral and tibial midshaft are altered from a relatively circular shape in early childhood, to a less uniform structure in early puberty. The medio-lateral proximal femur and antero-posterior tibial expansions are due to hip breadth effects and locomotion loads (3). Meanwhile, another study on
human archaeological samples show that larger active remodeling areas are concentrated in the lateral and anterior portions of infant tibia, and the remodeling areas are more likely to spread throughout the entire cortex of adult tibia (4). This study also uses Geographical Information Systems (GIS) and observed that bone tissue reorganization seems to start in the lateral side during infancy and is concentrated in the anterior part of the tibia during youth and pre-adult stages. In adulthood, remodeling is mostly localized in the medial section and progressively reaches the medial-posterior region. Raman studies of these infant, juvenile, and adult samples further demonstrate that the lateral side in the infant and the posterior side in juveniles indicate the lower levels of crystallinity and thus active remodeling. It is worth mentioning that for adults, the crystallinity of the anterior section is markedly less than the other three sections (4). These studies demonstrate that the composition as well as modeling and remolding processes in these four sections are different.

This phenomenon was also examined on animal bones. Abel-Wahab et al. (5) compared the mechanical properties of the four anatomical positions (anterior, medial, posterior, and lateral) in two directions (axial and transverse) of bone. They assessed microstructure-linked anisotropic mechanical properties of bovine femur using macroscale tension test and dynamic mechanical analysis (DMA). The study shows that the axial strength (longitudinal sections) for various anatomical positions is higher than the transversal strength (transverse sections) with significant differences in magnitude for those positions. For the longitudinal specimens, the anterior portion is the strongest while the lateral is the weakest. Differently, for the transverse specimens, the medial part is the stiffest and the posterior is the weakest. Authors linked these distinctions to the differences of their microstructures that the lateral and posterior sections contain more secondary osteons while the anterior and medial sections contain more primary
osteons (5). The anterior cortex and posterior cortex of equine bones are also extensively studied for examining the adaptation of bone histology to loading because in life the anterior cortex is loaded almost entirely in tension, while the posterior cortex in compression (6-14). Microscopic analysis reveals that primary lamellar bone is composed of predominantly longitudinal collagen fibers, irrespective of cortex; however, secondary osteons in the posterior cortex contained predominantly transverse collagen, while those formed elsewhere contain longitudinal collagen (8). Small-angle X-ray scattering (SAXS) experiments also reveals the differences of bone mineral crystals from the anterior and posterior zones: the average thickness of the mineral crystals are greater in the anterior section than in the posterior section; the orientation of the bone mineral crystals is predominantly in the longitudinal direction of bone, and the average tilt angle is about 30 degree for the anterior section and 45 degree for the posterior section (15). The anterior cortex shows a significantly higher ultimate tensile stress, a greater Young’s modulus, and tensile and bending strength, as well as higher impact energy absorption than the posterior cortex and the trends are reversed in compression (7, 9). Currey et al. (6) utilized nanoindentation method and found that the anterior osteons are stiffer than the posterior osteons at 0º (parallel to the bone’s long axis) and less stiffer at 90º (6).

Osteogenesis imperfect (OI) is a genetic disorder characterized by the fragility of bones and other tissues rich in type I collagen. The clinical manifestations include recurrent fractures with secondary deformities, muscle weakness, ligamentous laxity, bluish sclera, dentinogenesis imperfecta, and bone pain. Patients with OI, even the least severe type (type I), have major physical disabilities associated with the presence of deformities that directly affect mobility. However, the incentive of mobility in a safe environment helps to preserve bone resistance and
functional independence (16-18). It is beneficial to take a close look at the microstructure, molecular structure, and nanomechanical properties of tibia with OI disease.

Previous studies on the microstructure of OI bone specimens reveal five characteristics: thinner and more disrupted bone lamellation patterns; an increased number of vascular channels (19, 20); abnormal collagen aggregation and collagen fibrils (21); decreased mineral crystal size and crystallinity (22, 23); and altered D-periodic spacing (24, 25). The OI bone also has higher mineral:matrix ratio and lower carbonate: mineral ratio (26, 27, 34). Using nanoindentation, contradictory results are obtained. Both decreased elastic modulus and hardness of long bone were found in children with OI type III (28) and OI from mild to severe forms (29) as compared with normal data. *Oim* bone has lower stiffness (30). On the contrary, higher stiffness and hardness of the OI bone specimens than the controlled ones are also found (31). The nanoindentation method also reveals that bone from children with OI type III was more brittle than with OI type IV (32, 33) and that the use of sclerostin antibody does not alter the local tissue mineralization dynamics of OI bone (34). Studies also show that osteoblast in OI patients may interfere with multiple mechanisms that ensure adaptation of the skeleton to the increasing mechanical needs during growth because of three mechanisms leading to an increase in bone mass during childhood; that is, modeling of external bone size and shape, production of secondary trabeculae by endochondral ossification, and thickening of secondary trabeculae by remodeling (35).

In this study, we investigated the microstructural, molecular differences, and nanomechanical properties of OI bone specimens in transverse and longitudinal planes. The OI bone specimens are divided to anterior, medial, posterior, and lateral sections based on
anatomical positions. The goal of this study is not to merely compare the structure and mechanical properties of these sections, but to add to the understanding of OI disease.

6.2. Methods and Materials

6.2.1. Materials

One 20-mm-thick transverse section was cut from the mid-diaphysis of a human OI tibia which was obtained from National Disease Research Interchange, PA (No apparent metabolic bone disease record, 22 years old, female with pregnancy experience) and stored in a freezer at -70°C. The OI type was putative type I, the mild type, since the person had height of 67 inches and weight of 180lb with, which are typical of a healthy person. Marrow and flesh were removed by scraping with a ceramic knife and then the bone section was washed with deionized (DI) water at room temperature in approximately 10min to avoid deterioration of bone. Specimens with the size of about 5×5×1mm were cut from four anatomical positions parallel and transverse to the bone axis (Figure 6.1) using a low-speed diamond-wafering blade (Buehler, Isomet, Lake Bluff, IL). Three groups of these specimens were obtained for SEM, FTIR, and in situ FE-SEM nanoindentation experiments.
6.2.2. Experiment

6.2.2.1. Scanning electron microscopy studies

Microstructure of the bone specimens was studied using a JEOL JSM-6490LV scanning electron microscope (SEM) and a JEOL JSM-7600F analytical high resolution field-emission scanning electron microscope (FE-SEM). Sample preparation for the scanning electron microscope (SEM) imaging follows our previous work (36).

6.2.2.2. FTIR Spectroscopy studies

Photoacoustic (PA)-FTIR experiments were carried out using a Thermo Electron, Nexus 870 spectrometer which is equipped with MTEC Model 300 photoacoustic accessory. Before collecting data for each sample, the PA chamber was purged with dry helium for 15 minutes.
Linear photoacoustic spectra were collected after 1000 scans in the range of 4000-400 cm\(^{-1}\) at a mirror velocity of 0.15 cm/s, with a spectral resolution of 4 cm\(^{-1}\). GRAMS/32 software was used for spectra analysis.

6.2.2.3. In situ FE-SEM nanoindentation tests

Nanoindentation tests were performed with a Hysitron PI-85 nanomechanical instrument with a Berkovich tip made of boron-through-doped diamond (Minneapolis, MN), which was installed in a high-resolution Field Emission Scanning Electron Microscope (FE-SEM, mode: Jeol JSM-7600F). Detailed descriptions of the principle of this instrument can be found in the literature (37). The probe was also calibrated on fused quartz. Lower secondary electron images (LEI) were obtained by FE-SEM while nanoindentation was performed.

The elastic modulus and hardness of bone are determined by using the common method developed by Oliver and Pharr (38). With the assumption that bone tissue is elastically isotropic and homogeneous, the Young’s modulus is calculated using the following equation (6.1):

\[
\frac{1}{E_r} = \frac{(1 - v^2)}{E} + \frac{(1 - v_i^2)}{E_i} \tag{6.1}
\]

where \(E\) is the elastic modulus, \(v\) is Poisson’s ratio, \(s\) and \(i\) refer to sample and indenter tip material, respectively. \(E_r\) is the reduced modulus which can be obtained from indentation curve; \(v_s\) of bone is set to 0.3; \(E_i\) and \(v_i\) are the same quantities for the diamond indenter: \(E_i = 1141\) GPa, \(v_i = 0.07\).

In situ FE-SEM nanoindentation was performed with static load control; 50 \(\mu\)N was applied as the load for the samples on the transverse section plane (Figure 6.2). An interlamellar cement band is obviously seen in the figure and separates the osteon and interstitial lamellae.
Sixty indents were performed inside the osteon, and thirty indents outside the osteon. For the samples on the longitudinal plane (Figure 6.2b), 15 µN, 50 µN, and 100 µN were applied with thirty indents for each load. To avoid pile-up effect, indent spacing was set about 1 µm. Some surface defects were observed (e.g., pitch, cracks, pop-outs) and excluded from the nanoindentation.

![Figure 6.2. In situ FE-SEM nanoindentation performed on the surface of (a)(b) Trans-anterior section; (c)(d) Longi-anterior section.](image)

6.3. Results

6.3.1. Microstructure of OI human cortical bone

Figure 6.3 (a-j) shows the SEM images of the surfaces of OI bone specimens fractured in liquid N₂ from different cortex positions (anterior, medial, posterior, and lateral) in the
longitudinal and transverse planes. The four sections all show trabecular structures near medullary cavity (Figure 6.3a, c), some of these structures are broken and lost after cutting and fracturing (Figure 6.3f, i). From these SEM images, it is hard to differentiate primary osteon and secondary osteon for some Harversian systems. However, some secondary osteons with cement lines as boundaries are still evidently seen in all of the four sections (Figure 6.3a, c, f, and i). Therefore, these four sections all have remodeling areas. It is also seen that the anterior, posterior, and lateral sections all contain big resorption cavities and more Harversian systems compared to the medial section. This reflects larger remodeling areas of the three sections than the medial section, which is different from the study on archaeological samples (4). As compared to the anterior section, the posterior section seems less porous and contains more bone mass.

The lateral section has parallel bundles of mineralized fibrils in alternating directions within adjacent lamellae (Figure 6.3j), which is the same as the normal bone microstructure (39). The anterior, posterior, and medial sections have fibril bundles in one direction with gaps between adjacent lamellae (Figure 6.3b, d, g). This structure is essentially similar to the normal bone. As the mutations of OI bone are heterozygous, some of the gene products should still be normal. There are always normal lamellar bone structures composed of normally mineralized fibrils even in severe OI bone (39). Figure 6.3e and 3h are areas from the medial and posterior sections, respectively. The fibril bundles in these two areas are aligned in many different directions and some cracks appear in some of the interfaces between fibril bundles.

Overall, each section has its own variation in microstructure including smooth, near-normal areas and messed up, cracked areas. Comparatively, the medial section is more mature than the other three, and the lateral section possesses normal areas.
Figure 6.3. SEM images of human OI cortical bone (a, b) Anterior section; (c, d, e) Medial section; (f, g, h) Posterior section; (i, j) Lateral section (Thin arrows indicate secondary osteon (SO) regions and arrowheads bone powder region probably created from cutting procedure).
6.3.2. Photoacoustic-FTIR (PA-FTIR) spectra

PA-FTIR was also conducted on the eight samples as mentioned in the microstructure study part. Figure 6.4 (a) and (b) show PA-FTIR spectra of these four sections (anterior, medial, posterior, and lateral) of OI bone in the longitudinal and transverse planes. The spectra were normalized with the OAH peak (3322 cm\(^{-1}\)). The assignments of the bands are shown in Table 6.1. Bone is primarily comprised of organic component (collagen molecules and other organic component such as non-collagenous proteins, lipid, etc.) and inorganic component (hydroxyapatite).

Figure 6.4 (a) shows that the intensities of C-H stretching (2926 cm\(^{-1}\)), C=O stretching (1745 cm\(^{-1}\)), and C-H bending (1455 cm\(^{-1}\)) bands are correlated. Therefore, it is reasonable to assume that these three bands are from the same source, which is mainly lipid, with a little contribution from proteins, carbohydrates, and nucleic acids (40). In addition, it is observed that there is a great variety of the intensities of these three band areas for the longitudinal sections. The order of their intensities of the longitudinal sections is: Medial>Anterior>Lateral>Posterior. For the transverse sections, the intensities are almost the same. The trend that the longitudinal section has higher C-H stretching and C=O stretching intensities than the transverse section (36) is also seen here for the medial, anterior, and lateral sections except the posterior section. This phenomenon indicates the composition differences in the four areas.
Figure 6.4. PA-FTIR spectra of human OI cortical bone (anterior, medial, posterior, and lateral sections for the longitudinal and transverse sections, respectively). Velocity of mirror: 0.158 cm/s. (a) 4000-450 cm$^{-1}$ region; (b) 2300-450 cm$^{-1}$ region.
Table 6.1. Band assignments of PA-FTIR spectra from OI bone.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Wavenumber (cm(^{-1}))</th>
<th>Band Assignment</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3322</td>
<td>OH stretching vibration from water and combination of Amide A with N-H stretching</td>
<td>(57)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2926</td>
<td>CH(_2) asymmetric stretch: mainly lipids, with the little contribution from proteins, carbohydrates, nucleic acids</td>
<td>(40)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2854</td>
<td>CH(_2) symmetric stretch: mainly lipids, with the little contribution from proteins, carbohydrates, nucleic acids</td>
<td>(40)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(~2100)</td>
<td>OH stretching vibrations from P-OH</td>
<td>(58-60)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1745</td>
<td>C=O stretch: lipids, cholesterol esters, triglycerides</td>
<td>(61)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(~1652)</td>
<td>Amide I (protein C=O stretch)</td>
<td>(61)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1550-1506</td>
<td>Amide II (Protein N-H bend, C-N stretch)</td>
<td>(61)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1455</td>
<td>CH(_3) and carbonate (v_3) vibration</td>
<td>(40)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(~1240)</td>
<td>Amide 3(C-N stretch, N-H bend, C-C stretch)</td>
<td>(57)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1180-927</td>
<td>(v_3v_1) PO(_4^{3-})</td>
<td>(57)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>877</td>
<td>(v_2) CO(_3^{2-})</td>
<td>(57)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>721</td>
<td>C-H rocking</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>677</td>
<td>C-S stretching vibration</td>
<td>(41)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>572-610</td>
<td>(v_4) PO(_4^{3+})</td>
<td>(57)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The organic part from the collagen protein: Amide I band of C=O stretching at around 1652 cm\(^{-1}\) band area varies from one another. Since this band is overlapped with O-H bending, it is not analyzed here. Amide II (Protein N-H bend, C-N stretch) at 1550-1506 cm\(^{-1}\) and amide III (C-N stretch, N-H bend, C-C stretch) at around 1240 cm\(^{-1}\) are not prominent and they have almost the same shapes at the same positions.

210
It is noticeable that a broad band at around 677 cm\(^{-1}\), which is assigned to C-S stretching vibration (41), only appears strongly in the anterior section and less strongly in the lateral section, while it disappears in the other two sections. Instead, a small band exists at 721 cm\(^{-1}\) in the longi-medial section. This small band is assigned to C-H rocking vibration (41). These differences in spectra further prove that the four sections of tibia contain different compositions.

The spectra from the mineral component part, including OH stretching vibrations from P–OH around 2100 cm\(^{-1}\), \(\nu_4\) PO\(_4^{3-}\) band at 572-610 cm\(^{-1}\), and \(\nu_2\) out-of-plane bending of CO\(_3^{2-}\) at 877 cm\(^{-1}\) almost all remains the same band position and shape. The broad profiles of \(\nu_3\nu_1\) PO\(_4^{3-}\) band at 1180-927 cm\(^{-1}\) all vary from one another due to orientation effect and the difference among bone species as well.

6.3.3. In situ FE-SEM nanoindentation

In situ FE-SEM nanoindentation was performed on the anterior and posterior sections of both normal and OI cortical bones in the two planes (Figure 6.1). The representative load-displacement curves are shown in Figure 6.5 (a) and (b) for both transverse sections. The curve for the trans-posterior section is less smooth than the normal bone, while the curve for the trans-anterior section is zigzag shaped with lots of small and short turns. These phenomena reflect a more heterogeneous nature of the anterior section of OI bone at nanoscale.

The resulting elastic moduli from the transverse sections are shown in Table 6.2 and Figure 6.6. For the convenience of comparison, the corresponding data from normal bone are also listed in the Table. Three items can be compared here. (1) Comparison of interstitial lamellae and osteonal lamellae. As seen from Table 6.2 and Figure 6.6, for both anterior and posterior sections of normal and OI bones, the median elastic modulus and hardness of interstitial lamellae are almost all higher than those of osteonal lamellae. The reason is that the
interstitial lamellae are more mature than the osteonal lamellae (42,43). This trend is consistent for both normal and OI bones. (2) Comparison of anterior and posterior section. Figure 6.6 and Table 6.2 show that almost all median elastic moduli and hardness of the posterior sections are greater than those of values of corresponding anterior sections except the harness of normal bone. However, the hardness of normal bone exhibits different trend that the posterior section of normal bone shows much lower hardness than its anterior section. For OI bone, the trend of hardness is the same as that of elastic modulus. (3) Comparison of normal and OI bones. The median elastic modulus of OI bone is greater than those of normal bone. The hardness of OI bone is lower in the anterior section but higher in the posterior section than normal bone.

(a)  
(b)

![Image](image_url)

Figure 6.5. Representative load-displacement curve taken during a single nanoindentation test of the OI bone specimen with peak load of 50 μN: (a) Trans-anterior section; (b) Trans-posterior section.
Figure 6.6. Nanomechanical properties of normal and OI bones (anterior and posterior sections) in the transverse plane. OL refers to osteonal lamellae, and IL refers to interstitial lamellae. (a) Elastic modulus; (b) Hardness.
Table 6.2. Elastic moduli and hardness of anterior and posterior sections of human OI cortical bone for the transverse sections.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bone specimen</th>
<th>Elastic moduli(GPa)</th>
<th>Hardness(GPa)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Min</td>
<td>Median</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OI bone</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anterior</td>
<td>Osteonal lamellae</td>
<td>6.51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>section</td>
<td>Interstitial lamellae</td>
<td>1.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posterior</td>
<td>Osteonal lamellae</td>
<td>21.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>section</td>
<td>Interstitial lamellae</td>
<td>13.61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Normal bone</td>
<td>Osteonal lamellae</td>
<td>6.78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anterior</td>
<td>Interstitial lamellae</td>
<td>15.47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>section</td>
<td>Osteonal lamellae</td>
<td>3.54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posterior</td>
<td>Interstitial lamellae</td>
<td>4.59</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For the longitudinal sections, elastic modulus and hardness of anterior and posterior sections of normal and OI bones are shown in Table 6.3 and Figure 6.7. Similar three items are compared. (1) Comparison of different displacement. As seen from the Table 6.3 and Figure 6.7, the variation of elastic moduli with the lower load is greater than that with higher load in all bone sample types. This phenomenon has been observed previously (44). Lower load corresponds to shallow displacement which reflects more individual constituent properties rather than bulk properties with deep displacement. It is also noticed that the posterior section of OI bone has the same trend as the anterior section of normal bone: the median elastic modulus reduces with increased loading force. However, the trend of the anterior section of OI bone and the posterior section of normal is quite mixed. (2) Comparison of anterior and posterior sections. For normal bone, most median elastic moduli and hardness of posterior section are greater than those of anterior section. For OI bone, the median elastic moduli are hard to compare between anterior and posterior sections, while the hardness of posterior section is lower than that of anterior
Comparison of normal and OI bones. Most median elastic moduli and hardness of normal bone are greater than those of OI bone.

Figure 6.7. Nanomechanical properties of normal and OI bones (anterior and posterior sections) in the longitudinal plane. OL is osteonal lamellae, and IL is interstitial lamellae. (a) Elastic modulus; (b) Hardness.
Table 6.3. Elastic moduli and hardness of anterior and posterior sections of human OI cortical bone for the longitudinal sections.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bone specimen</th>
<th>Elastic modulus (GPa)</th>
<th>Hardness (GPa)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Load</td>
<td>Min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OI bone</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anterior</td>
<td>15µN</td>
<td>2.96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>section</td>
<td>50 µN</td>
<td>2.57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>100 µN</td>
<td>11.55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posterior</td>
<td>15µN</td>
<td>17.87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>section</td>
<td>50 µN</td>
<td>16.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>100 µN</td>
<td>12.96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Normal bone</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anterior</td>
<td>15µN</td>
<td>10.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>section</td>
<td>50 µN</td>
<td>8.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>100 µN</td>
<td>8.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posterior</td>
<td>15µN</td>
<td>9.54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>section</td>
<td>50 µN</td>
<td>8.93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>100 µN</td>
<td>3.92</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6.4. Discussion

Bone constantly undergoes mechanical force induced modeling (reshaping) and remodeling processes to remove old, microdamaged bone and replace it with new bone to help preserve bone strength. Remodeling of bone involves resorption of old bone by osteoclasts and formation of new bone by osteoblasts. The round secondary osteons only appear in the existing bone tissue during remodeling process with a characteristic cement line seen at the junction between the outermost lamella of the new osteon and the preexisting older bone. In comparison, the primary osteons are created in the periosteum during the modeling process; therefore the primary osteons are usually surrounded by parallel circumferential lamellae (45). It is largely
accepted that remodeling exists from the perinatal and infant stages (46). Generally, the positions containing circumferential lamellae maintained higher elastic modulus and ultimate tensile strength than those with secondary osteons (47). In this study, SEM images show that remodeling occurs throughout all sections characterized by secondary osteons. The lateral section has some areas the same as the normal bone, while the other three sections have similar structures. However, from the SEM images, it is hard to identify the structural differences at the molecular scale or nanoscale among the four sections.

In another study, we find that the anterior section of OI bone is very porous and contains more non-collagenous proteins (48). SEM and FTIR studies of the four sections in the present study further confirm that OI bone is porous and contains more non-collagenous proteins. The medial section of OI bone has the largest amount of non-collagenous proteins based on the spectroscopic study. The intensity of C-S stretching vibration band at around 640-710 cm\(^{-1}\) is correlated for the longitudinal and transverse sections when it is from the same anatomical position of OI bone. The C-S band is probably from the replacement of cysteine for glycine in the collagen molecules or an increased amount of cysteine-rich osteonectin. The intensity of C-S band is the greatest in anterior, followed by lateral, and the least intense are posterior and medial, which have similar intensity. This order may reflect the extent of alteration in the collagen molecules or non-collagenous proteins in these four positions of OI bone. This phenomenon is in good agreement with the nanomechanical testing results. In situ FE-SEM nanoindentation shows that the anterior section of OI bone has unsmooth load-displacement curves and more site-specific nanomechanical properties than the posterior section, indicating that the anterior section is more heterogeneous than the posterior section. The nanomechanical properties of the posterior section are also seen to have similar trends as the anterior section of normal bone: (1) For the
transverse section, both of the median elastic moduli and hardness values of interstitial lamellae are greater than osteonal lamellae; (2) As the load increases, the elastic moduli and hardness values decrease; (3) The variation of nanomechanical properties of the posterior section decreases with increased load. On the other hand, the posterior section of normal bone has some similarities as the anterior section of OI bone: (1) Both of them have great variation of mechanical properties except the hardness of transverse section of normal bone; (2) Both of them show irregular trend for the longitudinal sections. Overall, the comparison of nanomechanical properties between OI and normal bones is mixed for the transverse and longitudinal sections because of the variation and site-specific nanomechanical properties of bone samples. Therefore, more nanoindentations and bone samples are required for a better statistical study.

As mentioned before, reduced nanomechanical properties are found in bones from OI type III children (3.2-12.4 years) and oim mice as compared with normal and controlled data (28, 30). The oim model mimics moderate to severe OI in humans, similar to OI type III (30). Therefore, one reason for those reduced nanomechanical properties of OI bone is that, as the second most severe type, OI type III bone contains structurally abnormal microstructure and abnormal cortical remodeling (39, 49), causing both reduced elastic modulus and reduced hardness. In the present study, the OI bone sample is putative type I OI, which is the mildest type with less abnormal microstructure than type III. The second possible reason for those reduced nanomechanical properties of bone from OI type III children (3.2-12.4 years) as compared with normal matured data is that, bone becomes stronger when it gets more mature (50). In other words, bone from an adult is more mature and, therefore, stronger than bone from a person before puberty. Bone constantly undergoes modeling and remodeling processes to help preserve bone strength. Holguin et al. find that the tibial structure and strength are both influenced by
compression. The cortical bone volume and strength of bone increase with the loading (51). Silva et al. find the same trend that with loading, there is an increase in cortical bone volume, and they also find that there is significant increases in osteoblast/matrix genes in older mice (52). Under microgravity conditions, there are changes in the bone tissue such as the decreasing of bone mass and the reduction of bone strength (53). These studies confirm that bone adapts itself to the bearing force. Even with genetic bone disease, bone still adapts itself to obtain a higher strength to adapt to the increased body weight. Therefore, in OI patients, after puberty bone usually becomes stronger and less fractures occur (50). Our study shows that for the transverse sections, all interstitial lamellae have greater elastic moduli and hardness values than osteonal lamellae (54). Interstitial lamellae are made up of the remnants of the remodeled old osteons or primary bone tissue. The interstitial lamellae are more mature than newly formed secondary osteons. Therefore, the stronger mechanical properties of bone after puberty are due to the replacement of microdamaged bone by new secondary osteons through the remodeling process.

6.5. Conclusion

In the present study, SEM and PA-FTIR are utilized to characterize the OI human cortical bone (putative type I). Microstructure and IR spectra from four anatomical positions (anterior, medial, posterior, and lateral) in two planes (longitudinal and transverse) are compared. In addition, nanomechanical properties of the anterior and posterior sections from both normal and OI bones are measured using in situ FE-SEM nanoindentation. SEM images show that remodeling process occurs throughout all of the OI sections. Comparatively, the medial section contains less secondary osteons and the lateral section contains normal microstructure while the other three sections contain microstructures similar to normal.
FTIR spectra showed that the medial section contains more non-collagenous proteins than the anterior section. The lateral and posterior sections have even less non-collagenous proteins. The abnormal C-S band, which is probably from the replacement of cysteine for glycine in the collagen molecules or an increased amount of cysteine-rich osteonectin, appears more prominently in the anterior section than the lateral section. Meanwhile, there is almost no C-S band from the posterior and medial sections. This FTIR spectra analysis is in a good agreement with nanomechanical testing results that the anterior section of OI bone seems more heterogeneous in its properties. As compared to the anterior section, the posterior section exhibits more similar nanomechanical properties to the anterior section of normal bone. The nanomechanical properties of interstitial lamellae in all these bone samples are consistently greater than those of osteonal lamellae due to more mature nature of interstitial lamellae. However, other nanomechanical properties of these sections do not accord with each other, indicating a heterogeneous and site-specific nature of bone samples. It also seems that the nanomechanical properties of bone depends on its anatomical section and its direction as well.

In order to better understand the molecular mechanism of OI, genomic identity of this bone material used in the present study is needed. Also, in situ FE-SEM nanoindentation on the medial and lateral sections are also required.

6.6. Acknowledgements

Instrumentation obtained from National Science Foundation MRI grants is acknowledged for enabling experiments conducted in this work. I would like to acknowledge assistance in electron microscopy laboratory from Mr. Scott Payne.
6.7. References


225


47. Currey JD. Differences in the tensile strength of bone of different histological types. Journal of Anatomy. 1959;93(1):87-&.

48. Gu C, Katti DR, Katti KS. Microstructural and Infrared Spectroscopic Studies of Human Cortical Bone in Osteogenesis Imperfecta. to be submitted ed.


CHAPTER 7. SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS

This chapter summarizes and concludes the research presented in this dissertation.

- Photoacoustic-Fourier transform infrared spectroscopy (PA-FTIR) experiments were conducted to investigate the orientational differences in molecular structure of human bone. PA-FTIR has the priority to investigate “undisturbed” bone samples with the protection of coupling inert gas which can inhibit bacterial growth of bone by replacing oxygen. It is found that the photoacoustic mode (linear-scan) can obtain basically similar spectra of bone as compared to the traditional transmission mode, but it seem more sensitive to amide III and ν2 carbonate bands. As indicated by ν1 phosphate band in the spectra, phosphate ion geometry appears less symmetric in its undisturbed state as detected by the photoacoustic mode as compared to higher symmetry observed using transmission mode on disturbed samples. Moreover, the PA-FTIR spectra indicate a band at 1747 cm\(^{-1}\) possibly resulting from C=O stretching of lipids, cholesterol esters, and triglycerides from the arteries. Comparison of the spectra in transverse and longitudinal cross-sections demonstrates that, the surface of the longitudinal section bone appears to have more organic matrix exposed and with higher mineral stoichiometry. The PA-FTIR depth profiling experiments on human cortical bone also indicate the influence of water on OH band and the cutting effects on amide I and mineral bands.

- PA-FTIR, scanning electron microscopy (SEM), and X-ray diffraction (XRD) are used to describe the structural and compositional differences between osteogenesis imperfecta (OI) and healthy bones at the molecular-, micro-, and macro- scale levels. OI bone exhibits more porous, fibrous features, abnormal collagen fibrils, and
abnormal mineral deposits, as revealed by SEM images. Likewise, photoacoustic-Fourier transform infrared spectroscopy (PA-FTIR) experiments indicate an aberrant collagen structure. The spectra also reveal a slightly altered mineral structure in OI. In contrast, there is neither significant difference in the non-collagenous proteins (NCPs) composition as shown in the spectra nor apparent change in the crystal structure between OI and healthy bone minerals as shown in x-ray diffraction (XRD) and Energy-dispersive X-ray spectroscopy (EDS) results. This phenomenon indicates that the biomineralization process is more controlled by the bone cells and non-collagenous phosphorylated proteins. PA-FTIR studies of OI bone also confirm that there is an orientational difference in the stoichiometry of the mineral in OI bone. In addition, a larger volume of the hydrated layer in the transverse plane than the longitudinal plane of the mineral crystal structure is proposed. The appearance of a new C-S band in FTIR spectra in OI bone suggests the substitution of glycine by cysteine in collagen molecules or/and an increased amount of cysteine-rich osteonectin which relates to mineral nucleation and mineral crystal formation.

- Modulus mapping technique and in situ field emission-scanning electron microscope (FE-SEM) nanoindentation are both applied for the first time on “undisturbed” normal and OI human cortical bones at the nanometer and sub-micro scale levels in this work. Modulus mapping test reveals the elastic moduli of near-pure hydroxyapatite and collagen to be 189.85 GPa and 2.42 GPa for normal bone, and 294.69 GPa and 2.85 GPa for OI bone, respectively. Modulus mapping also indicates spatial variation of elastic moduli consistent with the distribution of mineralized fibril and extrafibrillar mineral. From modulus maps, the diameter of collagen fiber and the
size of mineral crystals in OI are observed to be smaller and the mineral crystal in OI is also observed to be less heterogeneous than those from normal bone. The median elastic moduli of OI bone are greater than those of normal bone. In situ FE-SEM nanoindentation reveals the existence of a highly mineralized inner ring with higher elastic moduli adjacent to the Haversian canal, and that the elastic nanomechanical properties of interstitial lamellae are greater than osteonal lamellae. A periodic modulation in modulus corresponding to the width of a lamella is also observed in in situ FE-SEM nanoindentation. Varying median elastic moduli in the transverse and longitudinal orientations obtained from these two experiments indicate that at nanoscale, the interaction between mineral and collagen influences the mechanical properties; while at micro scale, the orientation and arrangement of mineral and collagen play more significant roles. OI bone in the transverse section (nanoindentation force is applied along the physiological loading direction) shows higher elastic moduli for both interstitial and osteonal lamellae, but lower hardness than normal bone.

- Time-dependent nanomechanical properties of human cortical bone were studied using dynamic nanoindentation (nanoDMA) at the sub-micro scale level. The samples include intact, demineralized, and OI human cortical bone specimens. Loss tangent, tan δ, was considered as a measure of the degree of the viscoelastic response. Variable dynamic load tests show that the viscoelastic responses of all bone specimens increase with frequency. With demineralization, bone specimens show greater viscoelastic response than intact specimens. OI bone shows similar viscoelastic response as normal bone. Results suggest that the viscoelasticity of bone
is mostly attributable to the mineral phase. The present study adds to the understanding of viscoelastic response of bone material. In addition, the dynamic mechanical properties of OI bone are firstly reported here.

- The microstructure and molecular composition of different anatomical positions (anterior, medial, posterior, and lateral regions) in the diaphysis of an OI human tibia are also examined for the first time. Study shows that although there is no significant microstructural difference seen in SEM images, FTIR results still reveals some differences in molecular composition of the four anatomical positions. This FTIR spectra analysis is in a good agreement with in situ FE-SEM nanoindentation testing that the anterior section of OI bone seems more heterogeneous in its properties. Nanomechanical properties of interstitial lamellae in all these bone samples are consistently greater than those of osteonal lamellae. The nanomechanical properties of bone depend on its anatomical section and its direction as well.
CHAPTER 8. MAJOR CONTRIBUTIONS

Our research makes four major contributions:

- The development of a novel methodology for conducting infrared spectroscopic study on “undisturbed” biological samples using photoacoustic-Fourier transform infrared spectroscopy (PA-FTIR). Comparison between photoacoustic and transmission modes were conducted. We find that orientational differences in stoichiometry of hydroxyapatite are influenced by the interactions between mineral and collagen molecules. Another finding is that FTIR spectra of OI (putative type I) bone show the appearance of a new C-S band which might be from either the substitution of glycine by cysteine in collagen molecules or/and an increased amount of cysteine-rich osteonectin which relates to mineral nucleation and mineral crystal formation.

- For the first time we performed in situ field emission-scanning electron microscopy (FE-SEM) nanoindentation on bone samples. In situ FE-SEM nanoindentation provides a new tool to investigate the mechanical properties of materials with high resolution image and precise positioning of the indenter. We find the existence of a highly mineralized inner ring with higher elastic moduli adjacent to the Haversian canal, and that the elastic nanomechanical properties of interstitial lamellae are greater than osteonal lamellae. A periodic modulation in modulus corresponding to the width of a lamella is also observed in in situ FE-SEM nanoindentation. The nanomechanical properties of bone depends on its anatomical section and its direction as well.

- The difference of elastic modulus values acquired from modulus mapping and nanoindentation tests indicates a scale issue, i.e. at different length scales, due to different
arrangement and different interactions among the constituents, materials exhibit different mechanical behaviors.

- We compared the microstructure, compositional differences, and nanomechanical properties of healthy and osteogenesis imperfect (OI) bones, helping to understand the molecular bases of OI disease and the mineralization condition in OI bone. We find that the defective collagen results in a distorted microstructure in bone and also that the mineralization of hydroxyapatite in OI bone is also altered.

- Several novel experimental findings: We find that modulus mapping reveals the elastic moduli of near-pure hydroxyapatite and collagen to be 189.85 GPa and 2.42 GPa for normal bone, and 294.69 GPa and 2.85 GPa for OI bone, respectively. Modulus mapping also shows the distribution of mineralized fibril and extrafibrillar mineral according to the spatial variation of elastic properties. From modulus maps, the diameter of collagen fiber and the size of mineral crystals in OI are observed to be smaller and the mineral crystal in OI is also observed to be less heterogeneous than those from normal bone. In addition, the viscoelastic response of all bone specimens (intact, demineralized, and OI) decreases with frequency. Despite the significant altered collagen molecules, the overall similar dynamic nanomechanical behaviors of OI (putative type I) bone and normal bone indicate that the viscoelasticity of intact bone is mostly determined by the mineral. The collagen phase also contributes to the viscoelasticity to some extent. Lastly, different anatomical positions (anterior, medial, posterior, and lateral regions) in the diaphysis of an OI human tibia show varying molecular compositions as revealed by FTIR spectra.
CHAPTER 9. FUTURE WORK

The following are possible future directions for investigating the multiscale behavior of both healthy and osteogenesis imperfecta (OI) bones:

- Acquiring an OI femur and then comparing healthy and OI femurs or acquiring a healthy tibia and then comparing healthy and OI tibias.
- Conducting nanomechanical testing on demineralized healthy and OI bones using atomic force microscope (AFM) to investigate the mechanical properties of their collagen fibrils.
- Conducting microindentation and/or larger scale mechanical testing of both healthy and OI bones.
- Obtaining more bone samples and conducting statistical study.
- Collagen analysis or Noncollagenous proteins (NCPs) analysis or genetic analysis of the OI bone is required to confirm the source of the C-S band at around 640-710 cm\(^{-1}\) on FTIR spectra.
APPENDIX A. INFORMATION SHEETS FOR HUMAN BONE SAMPLES

A.1. Healthy human femur

Figure A.1. Information sheet of healthy human femur from NDRI
A.2. Osteogenesis imperfecta human tibia

Figure A.2. Information sheet of OI human tibia from NDRI
APPENDIX B. SEM IMAGES OF HEALTHY HUMAN FEMUR

B.1. Anterior section

B.1.1. Transverse section

B.1.1.1. Transverse section of healthy human femur (anterior), fixed with a series of chemicals and fractured in liquid N$_2$

B.1.1.1.1. Acquired on 12/1/2010

Figure B.1. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) $\times$85

Figure B.2. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) $\times$100

Figure B.3. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) $\times$550

Figure B.4. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) $\times$1,000
Figure B.5.  SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×5,000

Figure B.6. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×13,000

Figure B.7. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×15,000

Figure B.8. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×40,000

Figure B.9. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×70,000

Figure B.10. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×37,000
B.1.1.1.2. Acquired on 3/2/2011

Figure B.11. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×400

Figure B.12. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×1,400

Figure B.13. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×60

Figure B.14. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×450

Figure B.15. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×60

Figure B.16. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×500
Figure B.17. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×1,500

B.1.1.2. Transverse section of healthy human femur (anterior), no chemical treatment, fractured in liquid N2 (3/25/2011)

Figure B.18. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×85

Figure B.19. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×100

Figure B.20. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×550

Figure B.21. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×1,000
Figure B.22. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×15,000

Figure B.23. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×40,000

Figure B.24. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×70,000

Figure B.25. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×40,000

B.1.1.3. Transverse section of healthy human femur (anterior), no chemical treatment, polished (3/2/2011)

Figure B.26. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×100

Figure B.27. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×220
Figure B.28. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×180

Figure B.29. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×350

Figure B.30. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×750

Figure B.31. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×900

Figure B.32. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×5,000

Figure B.33. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, anterior section) ×2,000
B.1.2. Longitudinal section

B.1.2.1. Longitudinal section of healthy human femur (anterior), fixed with a series of chemical and fractured in liquid N\textsubscript{2} (12/1/2010)

Figure B.34. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) \( \times 30,000 \)

Figure B.35. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) \( \times 75,000 \)

Figure B.36. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) \( \times 7,000 \)

Figure B.37. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) \( \times 20,000 \)
Figure B.38. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×13,000

Figure B.39. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×3,000

Figure B.40. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×10,000

Figure B.41. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×30,000

Figure B.42. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×80,000

Figure B.43. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×15,000
Figure B.44. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×25,000

(2) Acquired on 3/2/2011

Figure B.45. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×40,000

Figure B.46. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×40

Figure B.47. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×150

Figure B.48. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×700

Figure B.49. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×3,500
Figure B.50. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×10,000

Figure B.51. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×20,000

Figure B.52. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×60,000

Figure B.53. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×120,000

Figure B.54. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×40,000

Figure B.55. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×15,000
Figure B.56. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×35,000

Figure B.57. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×40,000

Figure B.58. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×60,000

Figure B.59. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×60,000

Figure B.60. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×15,000

Figure B.61. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×40,000
Figure B.62. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×40,000

B.1.2.2. Longitudinal section of healthy human femur (anterior), polished (3/2/2011)

Figure B.63. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×15,000

Figure B.64. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×50

Figure B.65. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×20,000

Figure B.66. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section) ×50,000
B.2. Medial section

B.2.1. Transverse section

Figure B.70. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, medial section) $\times25$

Figure B.71. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, medial section) $\times50$
Figure B.72. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, medial section) ×30

Figure B.73. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, medial section) ×100

Figure B.74. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, medial section) ×300

Figure B.75. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, medial section) ×1,000

Figure B.76. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, medial section) ×100

Figure B.77. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, medial section) ×95
B.2.2. Longitudinal section

Figure B.78. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., medial section) ×25

Figure B.79. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., medial section) ×50

Figure B.80. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., medial section) ×150

Figure B.81. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., medial section) ×1,000

Figure B.82. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., medial section) ×20,000

Figure B.83. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., medial section) ×80,000
Figure B.84. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., medial section) ×100

Figure B.85. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., medial section) ×1,000

Figure B.86. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., medial section) ×10,000

Figure B.87. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., medial section) ×40,000

Figure B.88. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., medial section) ×80,000

Figure B.89. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., medial section) ×80,000
Figure B.90. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., medial section) ×80,000

B.3. Lateral section

B.3.1. Transverse section

Figure B.91. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, lateral section) ×25

Figure B.92. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., medial section) ×25
Figure B.93. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, lateral section) ×100

Figure B.94. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, lateral section) ×500

Figure B.95. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, lateral section) ×3,000

Figure B.96. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, lateral section) ×20,000

Figure B.97. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, lateral section) ×80,000

Figure B.98. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, lateral section) ×80,000
Figure B.99. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, lateral section) ×10,000

Figure B.100. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, lateral section) ×7,000

Figure B.101. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, lateral section) ×40,000

Figure B.102. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, lateral section) ×10,000

B.3.2. Longitudinal section

Figure B.103. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., lateral section) ×25

Figure B.104. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., lateral section) ×100

255
Figure B.105. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., lateral section) \( \times 100 \)

Figure B.106. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., lateral section) \( \times 100 \)

Figure B.107. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., lateral section) \( \times 500 \)

Figure B.108. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., lateral section) \( \times 1,000 \)

Figure B.109. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., lateral section) \( \times 7,000 \)

Figure B.110. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., lateral section) \( \times 80,000 \)
Figure B.111. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., lateral section) ×40,000

B.4. Posterior section

B.4.1. Transverse section

Figure B.112. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, posterior section) ×25

Figure B.113. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, posterior section) ×25
Figure B.114. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, posterior section) \( \times 25 \)

Figure B.115. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, posterior section) \( \times 100 \)

Figure B.116. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, posterior section) \( \times 1,000 \)

Figure B.117. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, posterior section) \( \times 4,500 \)

Figure B.118. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, posterior section) \( \times 200 \)

Figure B.119. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, posterior section) \( \times 20,000 \)
B.4.2. Longitudinal section

Figure B.120. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, posterior section) \( \times 30,000 \)

Figure B.121. SEM image of healthy human femur (transverse, posterior section) \( \times 40,000 \)

Figure B.122. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., posterior section) \( \times 25 \)

Figure B.123. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., posterior section) \( \times 100 \)
Figure B.124. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., posterior section) $\times 550$

Figure B.125. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., posterior section) $\times 3,000$

Figure B.126. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., posterior section) $\times 10,000$

Figure B.127. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., posterior section) $\times 45,000$

Figure B.128. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., posterior section) $\times 100$

Figure B.129. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., posterior section) $\times 100$
Figure B.130. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., posterior section) ×43

Figure B.131. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., posterior section) ×25

Figure B.132. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., posterior section) ×100

Figure B.133. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., posterior section) ×150

Figure B.134. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., posterior section) ×180

Figure B.135. SEM image of healthy human femur (longi., posterior section) ×180
APPENDIX C. SEM IMAGES OF OI HUMAN TIBIA

C.1. Anterior section, fixed with a series of chemicals and fractured in liquid $\text{N}_2$

C.1.1. Transverse section

C.1.1.1. Acquired on 12/10/2012 (JEOL JSM-7600F analytical high resolution field-emission scanning electron microscope (FE-SEM))

Figure C.1. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) $\times 37$

Figure C.2. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) $\times 100$

Figure C.3. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) $\times 150$

Figure C.4. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) $\times 250$
Figure C.5. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) ×650

Figure C.6. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) ×40,000

Figure C.7. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) ×80,000

Figure C.8. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) ×3,000

Figure C.9. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) ×10,000

Figure C.10. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) ×40,000
Figure C.11. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) ×40,000

Figure C.12. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) ×3,000

Figure C.13. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) ×3,000

Figure C.14. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) ×7,000

Figure C.15. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) ×35,000

Figure C.16. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) ×40,000
C.1.1.2. Acquired on 2/6/2014 (JEOL JSM-6490LV scanning electron microscope (SEM))

Figure C.17. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) ×25

Figure C.18. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) ×50

Figure C.19. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) ×100

Figure C.20. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) ×1,000

Figure C.21. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) ×5,000

Figure C.22. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) ×10,000
Figure C.23. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) ×20,000

Figure C.24. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) ×250

Figure C.25. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) ×1,000

Figure C.26. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) ×100

Figure C.27. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) ×750

Figure C.28. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) ×500
Figure C.29. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) ×1,000

Figure C.30. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) ×500

Figure C.31. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) ×100

Figure C.32. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) ×500

Figure C.33. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) ×700

Figure C.34. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) ×3,000
Figure C.35. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, anterior section) ×10,000

C.1.2. Longitudinal section

C.1.2.1. Acquired on 1/30/201

Figure C.36. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×100

Figure C.37. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×1,500
Figure C.38. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×6,000

Figure C.39. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×15,000

Figure C.40. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×35

Figure C.41. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×150

Figure C.42. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×50

Figure C.43. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×250
Figure C.44. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×100

Figure C.45. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×50

Figure C.46. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×150

Figure C.47. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×3,000

Figure C.48. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×6,000

Figure C.49. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×7,000
Figure C.50. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×3,000

Figure C.51. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×7,000

Figure C.52. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×30,000

Figure C.53. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×100

Figure C.54. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×3,000

Figure C.55. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×7,000
Figure C.56. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×3,000

Figure C.57. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×7,000

Figure C.58. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×14,000

Figure C.59. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×18,000

Figure C.60. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×3,000

Figure C.61. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×7,000
Figure C.62. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×14,000

Figure C.63. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×18,000

Figure C.64. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×3,000

Figure C.65. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×7,000

Figure C.66. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×3,300

Figure C.67. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×3,000
Figure C.68. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) $\times$7,000

Figure C.69. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) $\times$14,000

Figure C.70. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) $\times$18,000

Figure C.71. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) $\times$700

Figure C.72. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) $\times$7,000

Figure C.73. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) $\times$3,000
Figure C.74. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×100

Figure C.75. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×100

Figure C.76. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×3,300

Figure C.77. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×7,000

Figure C.78. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×18,000

Figure C.79. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×18,000
Figure C.80. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×3,000

Figure C.81. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×300

Figure C.82. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×300

Figure C.83. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×3,000

Figure C.84. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×3,000

Figure C.85. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×7,000
C.1.2.2. Acquired on 12/10/2012

Figure C.86. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×25

Figure C.87. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×50

Figure C.88. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×250

Figure C.89. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×500

Figure C.90. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×1,000

Figure C.91. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., anterior section) ×3,000
C.2. Medial section, fixed with a series of chemicals and fractured in liquid N$_2$

C.2.1. Transverse section (acquired on 2/6/2014)
Figure C.96. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×500

Figure C.97. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×1,000

Figure C.98. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×3,000

Figure C.99. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×10,000

Figure C.100. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×3,000

Figure C.101. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×10,000
Figure C.102. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×250

Figure C.103. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×500

Figure C.104. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×1,000

Figure C.105. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×3,000

Figure C.106. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×10,000

Figure C.107. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×70
Figure C.108. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×25

Figure C.109. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×50

Figure C.110. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×100

Figure C.111. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×3,000

Figure C.112. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×100

Figure C.113. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×250
Figure C.114. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×1,000

Figure C.115. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×3,000

Figure C.116. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×250

Figure C.117. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×3,000

Figure C.118. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×500

Figure C.119. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×1,000
Figure C.120. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×3,000

Figure C.121. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×10,000

Figure C.122. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×500

Figure C.123. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×1,000

Figure C.124. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×3,000

Figure C.125. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×2,000
Figure C.126. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×10,000

Figure C.127. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×500

Figure C.128. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×1,000

Figure C.129. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×250

Figure C.130. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×250

Figure C.131. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, medial section) ×1,000
C.2.2. Longitudinal section (acquired on 2/5/2014)
Figure C.138. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., medial section) ×80,000

Figure C.139. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., medial section) ×20,000

Figure C.140. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., medial section) ×30,000

Figure C.141. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., medial section) ×20,000

Figure C.142 SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., medial section) ×10,000

Figure C.143. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., medial section) ×3,700
Figure C.144. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., medial section) ×10,000

Figure C.145. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., medial section) ×40,000

Figure C.146. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., medial section) ×2,500

Figure C.147. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., medial section) ×5,000

Figure C.148. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., medial section) ×27,000

Figure C.149. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., medial section) ×10,000
C.3. Lateral section, fixed with a series of chemicals and fractured in liquid N\textsubscript{2}

C.3.1. Transverse section (acquired on 2/6/2014)
Figure C.154. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×100

Figure C.155. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×500

Figure C.156. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×1,000

Figure C.157. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×500

Figure C.158. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×100

Figure C.159. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×1,000
Figure C.160. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×3,000

Figure C.161. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×10,000

Figure C.162. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×500

Figure C.163. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×3,000

Figure C.164. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×1,000

Figure C.165. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×5,000
Figure C.166. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×500

Figure C.167. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×1,000

Figure C.168. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×5,000

Figure C.169. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×500

Figure C.170. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×1,000

Figure C.171. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×3,000
Figure C.172. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×10,000

Figure C.173. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×25

Figure C.174. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×50

Figure C.175. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×100

Figure C.176. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×250

Figure C.177. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×500
Figure C.178. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×1,000
Figure C.179. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×3,000
Figure C.180. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×10,000
Figure C.181. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×100
Figure C.182. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×500
Figure C.183. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×250
Figure C.184. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×500

Figure C.185. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×1,000

Figure C.186. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×3,000

Figure C.187. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×10,000

Figure C.188. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×250

Figure C.189. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×1,000
Figure C.190. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×3,000

Figure C.191. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, lateral section) ×10,000

C.3.2. Longitudinal section (acquired on 2/6/2014)

Figure C.192. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., lateral section) ×50

Figure C.193. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., lateral section) ×100
Figure C.194. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., lateral section) ×250

Figure C.195. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., lateral section) ×500

Figure C.196. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., lateral section) ×50

Figure C.197. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., lateral section) ×100

Figure C.198. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., lateral section) ×250

Figure C.199. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., lateral section) ×550
C.4. Posterior section, fixed with a series of chemicals and fractured in liquid N\textsubscript{2}

C.4.1. Transverse section (acquired on 2/6/2014)

Figure C.200. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×25

Figure C.201. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×50

Figure C.202. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×100

Figure C.203. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×100
Figure C.204. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×250

Figure C.205. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×1,000

Figure C.206. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×3,000

Figure C.207. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×10,000

Figure C.208. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×250

Figure C.209. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×500
Figure C.210. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×1,000

Figure C.211. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×3,000

Figure C.212. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×10,000

Figure C.213. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×100

Figure C.214. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×250

Figure C.215. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×500
Figure C.216. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×1,000

Figure C.217. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×3,000

Figure C.218. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×5,000

Figure C.219. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×10,000

Figure C.220. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×250

Figure C.221. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×500
Figure C.222. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×1,000

Figure C.223. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×4,300

Figure C.224. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×10,000

Figure C.225. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×50

Figure C.226. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×100

Figure C.227. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×500
Figure C.228. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×1,000

Figure C.229. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×3,000

Figure C.230. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×10,000

Figure C.231. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×20

Figure C.232. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×50

Figure C.233. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×250
Figure C.234. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×100

Figure C.235. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×250

Figure C.236. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×500

Figure C.237. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×1,000

Figure C.238. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×3,000

Figure C.239. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×1,000
Figure C.240. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×500

Figure C.241. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×3,000

Figure C.242. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×5,000

Figure C.243. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×10,000

Figure C.244. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×500

Figure C.245. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×100
Figure C.246. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×250

Figure C.247. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×250

Figure C.248. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×100

Figure C.249. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×1,000

Figure C.250. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×1,000

Figure C.251. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×3,000
Figure C.252. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×3,000

Figure C.253. SEM image of OI human tibia (transverse, posterior section) ×5,000

C.4.2. Longitudinal section (acquired on 2/6/2014)

Figure C.254. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., posterior section) ×50

Figure C.255. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., posterior section) ×100

Figure C.256. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., posterior section) ×250

Figure C.257. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., posterior section) ×550
Figure C.258. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., posterior section) ×1,000

Figure C.259. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., posterior section) ×3,000

Figure C.260. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., posterior section) ×7,500

Figure C.261. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., posterior section) ×19,000

Figure C.262. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., posterior section) ×3,500

Figure C.263. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., posterior section) ×6,000

307
Figure C.264. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., posterior section) ×40,000

Figure C.265. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., posterior section) ×40,000

Figure C.266. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., posterior section) ×12,000

Figure C.267. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., posterior section) ×10,000

Figure C.268. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., posterior section) ×10,000

Figure C.269. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., posterior section) ×40,000
Figure C.270. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., posterior section) ×40,000

Figure C.271. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., posterior section) ×5,000

Figure C.272. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., posterior section) ×35,000

Figure C.273. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., posterior section) ×10,000

Figure C.274. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., posterior section) ×40,000

Figure C.275. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., posterior section) ×10,000
Figure C.276. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., posterior section) ×5,000

Figure C.277. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., posterior section) ×2,000

Figure C.278. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., posterior section) ×10,000

Figure C.279. SEM image of OI human tibia (longi., posterior section) ×40,000
APPENDIX D. AFM IMAGES OF HEALTHY AND OI HUMAN BONES

D.1. Healthy human femur (left image: height, right image: phase)

D.1.1. No treatment, not polished

Figure D.1. AFM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section, no treatment, not polished), 5µm×5µm

Figure D.2. AFM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section, no treatment, not polished), 2µm×2µm
D.1.2. No treatment, polished

Figure D.3. AFM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section, no treatment, polished), 2µm×2µm

Figure D.4. AFM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section, no treatment, polished), 2µm×2µm
D.1.3. Demineralized for 5 minutes in EDTA (left image: height, right image: phase)

Figure D.5. AFM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section, demineralized for 5 minutes), 2.66µm×2.66µm

Figure D.6. AFM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section, demineralized for 5 minutes), 2µm×2µm
Figure D.7. AFM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section, demineralized for 5 minutes), 1µm×1µm

D.1.4. Demineralized for 4 hours in EDTA

Figure D.8. AFM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section, demineralized for 4 hours), 1µm×1µm

Period: 452.77/8=56.60 nm (it should be 65.01 nm after calibration adjustment)
After calibration (calibrated on 5/15/2013, 43.5nm becomes 50.0nm):

Figure D.9. AFM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section, demineralized for 4 hours), 2µm×2µm

Period: 313.94/5=62.79 nm

Figure D.10. AFM image of healthy human femur (longi., anterior section, demineralized for 4 hours), 1µm×1µm

Period: 66.27/3=66.27 nm; 259.77/4=64.94 nm
D.2. OI human tibia

D.2.1. No treatment, not polished

Figure D.11. AFM image of OI human femur (longi., anterior section, no treatment, not polished), 1µm×1µm

Figure D.12. AFM image of OI human femur (longi., anterior section, no treatment, not polished), 5µm×5µm
Figure D.13. AFM image of OI human femur (longi., anterior section, no treatment, not polished), 1µm×1µm

D.2.2. No treatment, polished

Figure D.14. AFM image of OI human femur (transverse, anterior section, no treatment, polished), 5µm×5µm
Figure D.15. AFM image of OI human femur (transverse, anterior section, no treatment, polished), 2µm×2µm

Figure D.16. AFM image of OI human femur (transverse, anterior section, no treatment, polished), 1µm×1µm
Figure D.17. AFM image of OI human femur (transverse, anterior section, no treatment, polished), 1µm×1µm

Longitudinal section (acquired on 04/07/2013, 04/16/2013)

Figure D.18. AFM image of OI human femur (longi., anterior section, no treatment, polished), 2µm×2µm
D.2.3. Demineralized for 5 minutes

Figure D.19. AFM image of OI human femur (longi., anterior section, demineralized for 5 minutes), 5µm×5µm

Figure D.20. AFM image of OI human femur (longi., anterior section, demineralized for 5 minutes), 2µm×2µm
Figure D.21. AFM image of OI human femur (longi., anterior section, demineralized for 5 minutes), 1µm×1µm

Figure D.22. AFM image of OI human femur (longi., anterior section, demineralized for 5 minutes), 2µm×2µm
Figure D.23. AFM image of OI human femur (longi., anterior section, demineralized for 5 minutes), 1µm×1µm

Period: 283.14/5=56.63 nm (it should be 65.09 nm after calibration adjustment)